

Verifying Imperative Programs using Auto2

Bohua Zhan

March 17, 2025

Abstract

This entry contains the application of auto2 to verifying functional and imperative programs. Algorithms and data structures that are verified include linked lists, binary search trees, red-black trees, interval trees, priority queue, quicksort, union-find, Dijkstra's algorithm, and a sweep-line algorithm for detecting rectangle intersection. The imperative verification is based on Imperative HOL and its separation logic framework. A major goal of this work is to set up automation in order to reduce the length of proof that the user needs to provide, both for verifying functional programs and for working with separation logic.

Contents

1	Introduction	7
2	Mapping	7
2.1	Map from an AList	8
2.2	Mapping defined by a set of key-value pairs	8
2.3	Set of keys of a mapping	9
2.4	Minimum of a mapping, relevant for heaps (priority queues) .	10
2.5	General construction and update of maps	10
3	Lists	10
3.1	Linear time version of rev	11
3.2	Strict sorted	11
3.3	Ordered insert	11
3.4	Deleting an element	12
3.5	Ordered insertion into list of pairs	12
3.6	Deleting from a list of pairs	13
3.7	Search in a list of pairs	14
4	Binary search tree	14
4.1	Definition and setup for trees	14
4.2	Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree	14
4.3	Sortedness on trees	15
4.4	Rotation on trees	15
4.5	Insertion on trees	16
4.6	Deletion on trees	16
4.7	Search on sorted trees	17
5	Partial equivalence relation	17
5.1	Combining two elements in a partial equivalence relation . . .	18
6	Union find	18
6.1	Representing a partial equivalence relation using rep_of array	18
6.2	Operations on rep_of array	20
7	Connectedness for a set of undirected edges.	21
8	Arrays	23
8.1	List swap	23
8.2	Reverse	23
8.3	Copy one array to the beginning of another	24
8.4	Sublist	24
8.5	Updating a set of elements in an array	25

9	Dijkstra’s algorithm for shortest paths	26
9.1	Graphs	26
9.2	Paths on graphs	26
9.3	Shortest paths	28
9.4	Interior points	28
9.5	Two splitting lemmas	29
9.6	Deriving <code>has_dist</code> and <code>has_dist_on</code>	30
9.7	Invariant for the Dijkstra’s algorithm	30
9.8	Starting state	31
9.9	Step of Dijkstra’s algorithm	32
10	Intervals	33
10.1	Definition of interval	33
10.2	Definition of interval with an index	33
10.3	Overlapping intervals	33
11	Interval tree	34
11.1	Definition of an interval tree	34
11.2	Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree	34
11.3	Invariant on the maximum	35
11.4	Condition on the values	35
11.5	Insertion on trees	36
11.6	Deletion on trees	36
11.7	Search on interval trees	38
12	Quicksort	38
12.1	Outer remains	38
12.2	<code>part1</code> function	39
12.3	Partition function	39
12.4	Quicksort function	40
13	Indexed priority queues	41
13.1	Successor functions, <code>eq-pred</code> predicate	41
13.2	Heap property	42
13.3	Bubble-down	42
13.4	Bubble-up	43
13.5	Indexed priority queue	43
13.6	Basic operations on <code>indexed_queue</code>	44
13.7	Bubble up and down	45
13.8	Main operations	46

14 Red-black trees	48
14.1 Definition of RBT	48
14.2 RBT invariants	48
14.3 Balancedness of RBT	49
14.4 Definition and basic properties of <code>cl_inv'</code>	49
14.5 Set of keys, sortedness	50
14.6 Balance function	50
14.7 ins function	52
14.8 Paint function	52
14.9 Insert function	53
14.10 Search on sorted trees and its correctness	53
14.11 <code>balL</code> and <code>balR</code>	53
14.12 <code>Combine</code>	54
14.13 <code>Deletion</code>	55
15 Rectangle intersection	56
15.1 Definition of rectangles	56
15.2 INS / DEL operations	57
15.3 Set of operations corresponding to a list of rectangles	58
15.4 Applying a set of operations	59
15.5 Implementation of <code>apply_ops_k</code>	60
16 Separation logic	61
16.1 Partial Heaps	61
16.2 Assertions	62
16.2.1 Existential Quantification	64
16.2.2 Pointers	64
16.2.3 Pure Assertions	65
16.2.4 Properties of assertions	65
16.2.5 Entailment and its properties	65
16.3 Definition of the run predicate	66
16.4 Definition of hoare triple, and the frame rule.	66
16.5 Hoare triples for atomic commands	67
16.6 Definition of procedures	69
17 Implementation of linked list	71
17.1 List Assertion	71
17.2 Basic operations	72
17.3 Reverse	72
17.4 Remove	73
17.5 Extract list	73
17.6 Ordered insert	73
17.7 Insertion sort	74
17.8 Merging two lists	75

17.9 List copy	76
17.10 Higher-order functions	76
18 Implementation of binary search tree	77
18.1 Tree nodes	78
18.2 Operations	78
18.2.1 Basic operations	78
18.2.2 Insertion	79
18.2.3 Deletion	79
18.2.4 Search	81
18.3 Outer interface	81
19 Implementation of red-black tree	81
19.1 Tree nodes	82
19.2 Operations	82
19.2.1 Basic operations	82
19.2.2 Rotation	84
19.2.3 Balance	85
19.2.4 Insertion	86
19.2.5 Search	87
19.2.6 Delete	87
19.3 Outer interface	91
20 Implementation of arrays	92
20.1 Array copy	92
20.2 Swap	92
20.3 Reverse	92
21 Implementation of quicksort	93
22 Implementation of union find	95
23 Implementation of connectivity on graphs	97
23.1 Constructing the connected relation	97
23.2 Connectedness tests	98
24 Implementation of dynamic arrays	98
24.1 Raw assertion	98
24.2 Abstract assertion	101
24.3 Derived operations	102
25 Implementation of the indexed priority queue	102
25.1 Basic operations	103
25.2 Bubble up and down	105
25.3 Main operations	106

25.4 Outer interface	107
26 Implementation of Dijkstra’s algorithm	108
26.1 Basic operations	108
26.2 Main operations	110
27 Implementation of interval tree	111
27.1 Interval and IdxInterval	112
27.2 Tree nodes	112
27.3 Operations	113
27.3.1 Basic operation	113
27.3.2 Insertion	114
27.3.3 Deletion	114
27.3.4 Search	116
27.4 Outer interface	116
28 Implementation of rectangle intersection	117
28.1 Operations	117
28.2 Initial state	117

1 Introduction

This AFP entry contains the applications of auto2 to verifying functional and imperative programs. These examples are published in [9].

- Functional programs (in directory Functional): we verify several functional algorithms and data structures, including: linked lists, binary search trees, red-black trees, interval trees, priority queue, quicksort, union-find, Dijkstra's algorithm, and a sweep-line algorithm for detecting rectangle intersection.
- Imperative programs (in directory Imperative): we verify imperative versions of the above algorithms and data structures, using Isabelle's Imperative HOL framework [1]. We make use of separation logic, following the framework set up by Lammich and Reis [5]. The general outline of some of the examples also come from there.

2 Mapping

```
theory Mapping-Str
imports Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main
begin
```

Basic definitions of a mapping. Here, we enclose the mapping inside a structure, to make evaluation a first-order concept.

```
datatype ('a, 'b) map = Map 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b option
```

```
fun meval :: ('a, 'b) map  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b option ( $\langle$ - $\rangle$  [90]) where
  (Map f)  $\langle$ h $\rangle$  = f h
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$ 
```

```
lemma meval-ext:  $\forall x. M \langle x \rangle = N \langle x \rangle \Longrightarrow M = N$ 
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$ 
```

```
definition empty-map :: ('a, 'b) map where
  empty-map = Map ( $\lambda x. \text{None}$ )
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$ 
```

```
definition update-map :: ('a, 'b) map  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) map ( $\langle$  - { -  $\rightarrow$  -  $\rangle$ 
[89,90,90] 90) where
  M {k  $\rightarrow$  v} = Map ( $\lambda x. \text{if } x = k \text{ then Some } v \text{ else } M \langle x \rangle$ )
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$ 
```

```
definition delete-map :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) map  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) map where
  delete-map k M = Map ( $\lambda x. \text{if } x = k \text{ then None else } M \langle x \rangle$ )
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$ 
```

2.1 Map from an AList

fun *map-of-alist* :: ('a × 'b) list ⇒ ('a, 'b) map **where**
map-of-alist [] = *empty-map*
| *map-of-alist* (x # xs) = (*map-of-alist* xs) {fst x → snd x}
⟨ML⟩

definition *has-key-alist* :: ('a × 'b) list ⇒ 'a ⇒ bool **where** [*rewrite*]:
has-key-alist xs a ⇔ (∃ p ∈ set xs. fst p = a)

lemma *map-of-alist-nil* [*rewrite-back*]:
has-key-alist ys x ⇔ (*map-of-alist* ys)⟨x⟩ ≠ None
⟨proof⟩
⟨ML⟩

lemma *map-of-alist-some* [*forward*]:
(*map-of-alist* xs)⟨k⟩ = Some v ⇒ (k, v) ∈ set xs
⟨proof⟩

lemma *map-of-alist-nil'*:
x ∈ set (map fst ys) ⇔ (*map-of-alist* ys)⟨x⟩ ≠ None
⟨proof⟩
⟨ML⟩

2.2 Mapping defined by a set of key-value pairs

definition *unique-keys-set* :: ('a × 'b) set ⇒ bool **where** [*rewrite*]:
unique-keys-set S = (∀ i x y. (i, x) ∈ S ⇒ (i, y) ∈ S ⇒ x = y)

lemma *unique-keys-setD* [*forward*]: *unique-keys-set* S ⇒ (i, x) ∈ S ⇒ (i, y) ∈ S ⇒ x = y
⟨proof⟩
⟨ML⟩

definition *map-of-aset* :: ('a × 'b) set ⇒ ('a, 'b) map **where**
map-of-aset S = Map (λa. if ∃ b. (a, b) ∈ S then Some (THE b. (a, b) ∈ S) else None)
⟨ML⟩

lemma *map-of-asetI1* [*rewrite*]: *unique-keys-set* S ⇒ (a, b) ∈ S ⇒ (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = Some b
⟨proof⟩

lemma *map-of-asetI2* [*rewrite*]: ∀ b. (a, b) ∉ S ⇒ (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = None
⟨proof⟩

lemma *map-of-asetD1* [*forward*]: (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = None ⇒ ∀ b. (a, b) ∉ S
⟨proof⟩

lemma *map-of-asetD2* [*forward*]:
unique-keys-set S ⇒ (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = Some b ⇒ (a, b) ∈ S
⟨proof⟩

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *map-of-aset-insert* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-}keys\text{-}set (S \cup \{(k, v)\}) \implies map\text{-}of\text{-}aset (S \cup \{(k, v)\}) = (map\text{-}of\text{-}aset S) \{k \rightarrow v\}$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *map-of-alist-to-aset* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-}keys\text{-}set (set\ xs) \implies map\text{-}of\text{-}aset (set\ xs) = map\text{-}of\text{-}alist\ xs$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *map-of-aset-delete* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-}keys\text{-}set\ S \implies (k, v) \in S \implies map\text{-}of\text{-}aset (S - \{(k, v)\}) = delete\text{-}map\ k (map\text{-}of\text{-}aset\ S)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *map-of-aset-update* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-}keys\text{-}set\ S \implies (k, v) \in S \implies map\text{-}of\text{-}aset (S - \{(k, v)\} \cup \{(k, v')\}) = (map\text{-}of\text{-}aset\ S) \{k \rightarrow v'\}$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *map-of-alist-delete* [rewrite]:

$set\ xs' = set\ xs - \{x\} \implies unique\text{-}keys\text{-}set (set\ xs) \implies x \in set\ xs \implies map\text{-}of\text{-}alist\ xs' = delete\text{-}map (fst\ x) (map\text{-}of\text{-}alist\ xs)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *map-of-alist-insert* [rewrite]:

$set\ xs' = set\ xs \cup \{x\} \implies unique\text{-}keys\text{-}set (set\ xs') \implies map\text{-}of\text{-}alist\ xs' = (map\text{-}of\text{-}alist\ xs) \{fst\ x \rightarrow snd\ x\}$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *map-of-alist-update* [rewrite]:

$set\ xs' = set\ xs - \{(k, v)\} \cup \{(k, v')\} \implies unique\text{-}keys\text{-}set (set\ xs) \implies (k, v) \in set\ xs \implies map\text{-}of\text{-}alist\ xs' = (map\text{-}of\text{-}alist\ xs) \{k \rightarrow v'\}$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

2.3 Set of keys of a mapping

definition *keys-of* :: ('a, 'b) map \Rightarrow 'a set **where** [rewrite]:

$keys\text{-}of\ M = \{x. M\langle x \rangle \neq None\}$

lemma *keys-of-iff* [rewrite-bidir]: $x \in keys\text{-}of\ M \iff M\langle x \rangle \neq None$ $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *keys-of-empty* [rewrite]: $keys\text{-}of\ empty\text{-}map = \{\}$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *keys-of-delete* [rewrite]:

$keys\text{-}of (delete\text{-}map\ x\ M) = keys\text{-}of\ M - \{x\}$ $\langle proof \rangle$

2.4 Minimum of a mapping, relevant for heaps (priority queues)

definition *is-heap-min* :: 'a ⇒ ('a, 'b::linorder) map ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:
is-heap-min x M ⟷ x ∈ keys-of M ∧ (∀ k ∈ keys-of M. the (M⟨x⟩) ≤ the (M⟨k⟩))

2.5 General construction and update of maps

fun *map-constr* :: (nat ⇒ bool) ⇒ (nat ⇒ 'a) ⇒ nat ⇒ (nat, 'a) map **where**
map-constr S f 0 = empty-map
| *map-constr* S f (Suc k) = (let M = *map-constr* S f k in if S k then M {k → f k}
else M)
⟨ML⟩

lemma *map-constr-eval* [rewrite]:
map-constr S f n = Map (λi. if i < n then if S i then Some (f i) else None else
None)
⟨proof⟩

lemma *keys-of-map-constr* [rewrite]:
i ∈ keys-of (map-constr S f n) ⟷ (S i ∧ i < n) ⟨proof⟩

definition *map-update-all* :: (nat ⇒ 'a) ⇒ (nat, 'a) map ⇒ (nat, 'a) map **where**
[rewrite]:
map-update-all f M = Map (λi. if i ∈ keys-of M then Some (f i) else M⟨i⟩)

fun *map-update-all-impl* :: (nat ⇒ 'a) ⇒ (nat, 'a) map ⇒ nat ⇒ (nat, 'a) map
where
map-update-all-impl f M 0 = M
| *map-update-all-impl* f M (Suc k) =
(let M' = *map-update-all-impl* f M k in if k ∈ keys-of M then M' {k → f k} else
M')
⟨ML⟩

lemma *map-update-all-impl-ind* [rewrite]:
map-update-all-impl f M n = Map (λi. if i < n then if i ∈ keys-of M then Some
(f i) else None else M⟨i⟩)
⟨proof⟩

lemma *map-update-all-impl-correct* [rewrite]:
∀ i ∈ keys-of M. i < n ⇒ *map-update-all-impl* f M n = *map-update-all* f M ⟨proof⟩

lemma *keys-of-map-update-all* [rewrite]:
keys-of (map-update-all f M) = keys-of M ⟨proof⟩

end

3 Lists

theory *Lists-Ex*

```

imports Mapping-Str
begin

```

Examples on lists. The `itrev` example comes from [7, Section 2.4].

The development here of insertion and deletion on lists is essential for verifying functional binary search trees and red-black trees. The idea, following Nipkow [6], is that showing sorted-ness and preservation of multisets for trees should be done on the in-order traversal of the tree.

3.1 Linear time version of `rev`

```

fun itrev :: 'a list ⇒ 'a list ⇒ 'a list where
  itrev [] ys = ys
| itrev (x # xs) ys = itrev xs (x # ys)
⟨ML⟩

```

```

lemma itrev-eq-rev: itrev x [] = rev x
⟨proof⟩

```

3.2 Strict sorted

```

fun strict-sorted :: 'a::linorder list ⇒ bool where
  strict-sorted [] = True
| strict-sorted (x # ys) = ((∀ y∈set ys. x < y) ∧ strict-sorted ys)
⟨ML⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-appendI [backward]:
  strict-sorted xs ∧ strict-sorted ys ∧ (∀ x∈set xs. ∀ y∈set ys. x < y) ⇒ strict-sorted
(xs @ ys)
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-appendE1 [forward]:
  strict-sorted (xs @ ys) ⇒ strict-sorted xs ∧ strict-sorted ys
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-appendE2 [forward]:
  strict-sorted (xs @ ys) ⇒ x ∈ set xs ⇒ ∀ y∈set ys. x < y
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-distinct [forward]: strict-sorted l ⇒ distinct l
⟨proof⟩

```

3.3 Ordered insert

```

fun ordered-insert :: 'a::ord ⇒ 'a list ⇒ 'a list where
  ordered-insert x [] = [x]
| ordered-insert x (y # ys) = (
  if x = y then (y # ys)
  else if x < y then x # (y # ys)

```

else $y \# \text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys$)
 <ML>

lemma *ordered-insert-set* [rewrite]:
 $\text{set } (\text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys) = \{x\} \cup \text{set } ys$
 <proof>

lemma *ordered-insert-sorted* [forward]:
 $\text{strict-sorted } ys \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys)$
 <proof>

lemma *ordered-insert-binary* [rewrite]:
 $\text{strict-sorted } (xs @ a \# ys) \implies \text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } (xs @ a \# ys) =$
 (if $x < a$ then $\text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } xs @ a \# ys$
 else if $x > a$ then $xs @ a \# \text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys$
 else $xs @ a \# ys$)
 <proof>

3.4 Deleting an element

fun *remove-elt-list* :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list **where**
 $\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } [] = []$
 | $\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } (y \# ys) = (\text{if } y = x \text{ then } \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys \text{ else } y \# \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys)$
 <ML>

lemma *remove-elt-list-set* [rewrite]:
 $\text{set } (\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys) = \text{set } ys - \{x\}$
 <proof>

lemma *remove-elt-list-sorted* [forward]:
 $\text{strict-sorted } ys \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys)$
 <proof>

lemma *remove-elt-idem* [rewrite]:
 $x \notin \text{set } ys \implies \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys = ys$
 <proof>

lemma *remove-elt-list-binary* [rewrite]:
 $\text{strict-sorted } (xs @ a \# ys) \implies \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } (xs @ a \# ys) =$
 (if $x < a$ then $\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } xs @ a \# ys$
 else if $x > a$ then $xs @ a \# \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys$ else $xs @ a \# ys$)
 <proof>

3.5 Ordered insertion into list of pairs

fun *ordered-insert-pairs* :: 'a::ord \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a \times 'b) list \Rightarrow ('a \times 'b) list **where**
 $\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \text{ } v \text{ } [] = [(x, v)]$
 | $\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \text{ } v \text{ } (y \# ys) = ($
 if $x = \text{fst } y$ then $((x, v) \# ys)$

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{else if } x < \text{fst } y \text{ then } (x, v) \# (y \# ys) \\ & \text{else } y \# \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys) \end{aligned}$$
 <ML>

lemma *ordered-insert-pairs-map* [rewrite]:

$$\text{map-of-alist } (\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys) = \text{update-map } (\text{map-of-alist } ys) \ x \ v$$
 <proof>

lemma *ordered-insert-pairs-set* [rewrite]:

$$\text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys)) = \{x\} \cup \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys)$$
 <proof>

lemma *ordered-insert-pairs-sorted* [backward]:

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys))$$
 <proof>

lemma *ordered-insert-pairs-binary* [rewrite]:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } (xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ ys)) \implies \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ (xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ ys) \\ & = \\ & \quad (\text{if } x < \text{fst } a \ \text{then } \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ ys \\ & \quad \text{else if } x > \text{fst } a \ \text{then } xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys \\ & \quad \text{else } xs \ @ \ (x, v) \ \# \ ys) \end{aligned}$$
 <proof>

3.6 Deleting from a list of pairs

fun *remove-elt-pairs* :: 'a \Rightarrow ('a \times 'b) list \Rightarrow ('a \times 'b) list **where**

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ [] = [] \\ & | \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ (y \ \# \ ys) = (\text{if } \text{fst } y = x \ \text{then } ys \ \text{else } y \ \# \ \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys) \end{aligned}$$
 <ML>

lemma *remove-elt-pairs-map* [rewrite]:

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{map-of-alist } (\text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys) = \text{delete-map } x \ (\text{map-of-alist } ys)$$
 <proof>

lemma *remove-elt-pairs-on-set* [rewrite]:

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys)) = \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) - \{x\}$$
 <proof>

lemma *remove-elt-pairs-sorted* [backward]:

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys))$$
 <proof>

lemma *remove-elt-pairs-idem* [rewrite]:

$$x \notin \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys = ys$$
 <proof>

lemma *remove-elt-pairs-binary* [rewrite]:
 $strict\text{-sorted } (map\ fst\ (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys)) \implies remove\text{-elt-pairs } x\ (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys) =$
(if $x < fst\ a$ *then* $remove\text{-elt-pairs } x\ xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys$
else if $x > fst\ a$ *then* $xs\ @\ a\ \#\ remove\text{-elt-pairs } x\ ys$ *else* $xs\ @\ ys$)
 <proof>

3.7 Search in a list of pairs

lemma *map-of-alist-binary* [rewrite]:
 $strict\text{-sorted } (map\ fst\ (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys)) \implies (map\text{-of-alist } (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys))\langle x \rangle =$
(if $x < fst\ a$ *then* $(map\text{-of-alist } xs)\langle x \rangle$
else if $x > fst\ a$ *then* $(map\text{-of-alist } ys)\langle x \rangle$ *else* $Some\ (snd\ a)$)
 <proof>

end

4 Binary search tree

theory *BST*
imports *Lists-Ex*
begin

Verification of functional programs on binary search trees. For basic technique, see comments in *Lists_Ex.thy*.

4.1 Definition and setup for trees

datatype $('a, 'b)$ *tree* =
 $Tip \mid Node\ (lsub: ('a, 'b)\ tree)\ (key: 'a)\ (nval: 'b)\ (rsub: ('a, 'b)\ tree)$
 <ML>

4.2 Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree

fun *in-traverse* :: $('a, 'b)$ *tree* \Rightarrow $'a$ *list* **where**
 $in\text{-traverse } Tip = []$
 $| in\text{-traverse } (Node\ l\ k\ v\ r) = in\text{-traverse } l\ @\ k\ \#\ in\text{-traverse } r$
 <ML>

fun *tree-set* :: $('a, 'b)$ *tree* \Rightarrow $'a$ *set* **where**
 $tree\text{-set } Tip = \{\}$
 $| tree\text{-set } (Node\ l\ k\ v\ r) = \{k\} \cup tree\text{-set } l \cup tree\text{-set } r$
 <ML>

fun *in-traverse-pairs* :: $('a, 'b)$ *tree* \Rightarrow $('a \times 'b)$ *list* **where**
 $in\text{-traverse-pairs } Tip = []$
 $| in\text{-traverse-pairs } (Node\ l\ k\ v\ r) = in\text{-traverse-pairs } l\ @\ (k, v)\ \#\ in\text{-traverse-pairs } r$
 <ML>

lemma *in-traverse-fst* [rewrite]:
 $\text{map fst (in-traverse-pairs } t) = \text{in-traverse } t$
 ⟨proof⟩

definition *tree-map* :: ('a, 'b) tree \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) map **where**
 $\text{tree-map } t = \text{map-of-alist (in-traverse-pairs } t)$
 ⟨ML⟩

4.3 Sortedness on trees

fun *tree-sorted* :: ('a::linorder, 'b) tree \Rightarrow bool **where**
 $\text{tree-sorted Tip} = \text{True}$
 $| \text{tree-sorted (Node } l \ k \ v \ r) = ((\forall x \in \text{tree-set } l. x < k) \wedge (\forall x \in \text{tree-set } r. k < x)$
 $\quad \wedge \text{tree-sorted } l \wedge \text{tree-sorted } r)$
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *tree-sorted-lr* [forward]:
 $\text{tree-sorted (Node } l \ k \ v \ r) \Longrightarrow \text{tree-sorted } l \wedge \text{tree-sorted } r$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *inorder-preserve-set* [rewrite]:
 $\text{tree-set } t = \text{set (in-traverse } t)$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *inorder-pairs-sorted* [rewrite]:
 $\text{tree-sorted } t \longleftrightarrow \text{strict-sorted (map fst (in-traverse-pairs } t))$
 ⟨proof⟩

Use definition in terms of in_traverse from now on.

⟨ML⟩

4.4 Rotation on trees

definition *rotateL* :: ('a, 'b) tree \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) tree **where** [rewrite]:
 $\text{rotateL } t = (\text{if } t = \text{Tip then } t \text{ else if } \text{rsub } t = \text{Tip then } t \text{ else}$
 $\quad (\text{let } rt = \text{rsub } t \text{ in}$
 $\quad \text{Node (Node (lsub } t) (\text{key } t) (\text{nval } t) (\text{lsub } rt)) (\text{key } rt) (\text{nval } rt) (\text{rsub } rt)))$

definition *rotateR* :: ('a, 'b) tree \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) tree **where** [rewrite]:
 $\text{rotateR } t = (\text{if } t = \text{Tip then } t \text{ else if } \text{lsub } t = \text{Tip then } t \text{ else}$
 $\quad (\text{let } lt = \text{lsub } t \text{ in}$
 $\quad \text{Node (lsub } lt) (\text{key } lt) (\text{nval } lt) (\text{Node (rsub } lt) (\text{key } t) (\text{nval } t) (\text{rsub } t))))$

lemma *rotateL-in-trav* [rewrite]: $\text{in-traverse (rotateL } t) = \text{in-traverse } t$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *rotateR-in-trav* [rewrite]: $\text{in-traverse (rotateR } t) = \text{in-traverse } t$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *rotateL-sorted* [forward]: $\text{tree-sorted } t \Longrightarrow \text{tree-sorted (rotateL } t)$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *rotateR-sorted* [forward]: $\text{tree-sorted } t \Longrightarrow \text{tree-sorted (rotateR } t)$ ⟨proof⟩

4.5 Insertion on trees

fun *tree-insert* :: 'a::ord ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) tree ⇒ ('a, 'b) tree **where**
tree-insert x v Tip = Node Tip x v Tip
| *tree-insert* x v (Node l y w r) =
 (if x = y then Node l x v r
 else if x < y then Node (tree-insert x v l) y w r
 else Node l y w (tree-insert x v r))
⟨ML⟩

lemma *insert-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:
tree-sorted t ⇒ *in-traverse-pairs* (tree-insert x v t) = *ordered-insert-pairs* x v
(*in-traverse-pairs* t)
⟨proof⟩

Correctness results for insertion.

theorem *insert-sorted* [forward]:
tree-sorted t ⇒ *tree-sorted* (tree-insert x v t) ⟨proof⟩

theorem *insert-on-map*:
tree-sorted t ⇒ *tree-map* (tree-insert x v t) = (tree-map t) {x → v} ⟨proof⟩

4.6 Deletion on trees

fun *del-min* :: ('a, 'b) tree ⇒ ('a × 'b) × ('a, 'b) tree **where**
del-min Tip = undefined
| *del-min* (Node lt x v rt) =
 (if lt = Tip then ((x, v), rt) else
 (fst (del-min lt), Node (snd (del-min lt)) x v rt))
⟨ML⟩

lemma *delete-min-del-hd-pairs* [rewrite]:
t ≠ Tip ⇒ fst (del-min t) # *in-traverse-pairs* (snd (del-min t)) = *in-traverse-pairs*
t
⟨proof⟩

fun *delete-elt-tree* :: ('a, 'b) tree ⇒ ('a, 'b) tree **where**
delete-elt-tree Tip = undefined
| *delete-elt-tree* (Node lt x v rt) =
 (if lt = Tip then rt else if rt = Tip then lt else
 Node lt (fst (fst (del-min rt))) (snd (fst (del-min rt))) (snd (del-min rt)))
⟨ML⟩

lemma *delete-elt-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:
in-traverse-pairs (delete-elt-tree (Node lt x v rt)) = *in-traverse-pairs* lt @ *in-traverse-pairs*
rt ⟨proof⟩

fun *tree-delete* :: 'a::ord ⇒ ('a, 'b) tree ⇒ ('a, 'b) tree **where**
tree-delete x Tip = Tip
| *tree-delete* x (Node l y w r) =


```

    (if x = y then delete-elt-tree (Node l y w r)
     else if x < y then Node (tree-delete x l) y w r
     else Node l y w (tree-delete x r))
⟨ML⟩

```

lemma *tree-delete-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:
tree-sorted t \implies *in-traverse-pairs (tree-delete x t) = remove-elt-pairs x (in-traverse-pairs t)*
⟨proof⟩

Correctness results for deletion.

theorem *tree-delete-sorted* [forward]:
tree-sorted t \implies *tree-sorted (tree-delete x t)* ⟨proof⟩

theorem *tree-delete-map* [rewrite]:
tree-sorted t \implies *tree-map (tree-delete x t) = delete-map x (tree-map t)* ⟨proof⟩

4.7 Search on sorted trees

```

fun tree-search :: ('a::ord, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b option where
  tree-search Tip x = None
| tree-search (Node l k v r) x =
  (if x = k then Some v
   else if x < k then tree-search l x
   else tree-search r x)
⟨ML⟩

```

Correctness of search.

theorem *tree-search-correct* [rewrite]:
tree-sorted t \implies *tree-search t x = (tree-map t)⟨x⟩*
⟨proof⟩

end

5 Partial equivalence relation

```

theory Partial-Equiv-Rel
  imports Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main
begin

```

Partial equivalence relations, following theory Lib/Partial_Equivalence_Relation in [3].

definition *part-equiv* :: ('a \times 'a) set \Rightarrow bool **where** [rewrite]:
part-equiv R \longleftrightarrow *sym R* \wedge *trans R*

lemma *part-equivI* [forward]: *sym R* \implies *trans R* \implies *part-equiv R* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *part-equivD1* [forward]: *part-equiv R* \implies *sym R* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *part-equivD2* [forward]: *part-equiv R* \implies *trans R* ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

5.1 Combining two elements in a partial equivalence relation

definition *per-union* :: ('a × 'a) set ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'a ⇒ ('a × 'a) set **where** [rewrite]:
 $per\text{-}union\ R\ a\ b = R \cup \{ (x,y). (x,a) \in R \wedge (b,y) \in R \} \cup \{ (x,y). (x,b) \in R \wedge (a,y) \in R \}$

lemma *per-union-memI1* [backward]:

$(x, y) \in R \implies (x, y) \in per\text{-}union\ R\ a\ b$ <proof>
<ML>

lemma *per-union-memI2* [backward]:

$(x, a) \in R \implies (b, y) \in R \implies (x, y) \in per\text{-}union\ R\ a\ b$ <proof>

lemma *per-union-memI3* [backward]:

$(x, b) \in R \implies (a, y) \in R \implies (x, y) \in per\text{-}union\ R\ a\ b$ <proof>

lemma *per-union-memD*:

$(x, y) \in per\text{-}union\ R\ a\ b \implies (x, y) \in R \vee ((x, a) \in R \wedge (b, y) \in R) \vee ((x, b) \in R \wedge (a, y) \in R)$
<proof>
<ML>

lemma *per-union-is-trans* [forward]:

$trans\ R \implies trans\ (per\text{-}union\ R\ a\ b)$ <proof>

lemma *per-union-is-part-equiv* [forward]:

$part\text{-}equiv\ R \implies part\text{-}equiv\ (per\text{-}union\ R\ a\ b)$ <proof>

end

6 Union find

theory *Union-Find*

imports *Partial-Equiv-Rel*

begin

Development follows theory Union_Find in [5].

6.1 Representing a partial equivalence relation using rep_of array

function (*domintros*) *rep-of* **where**

$rep\text{-}of\ l\ i = (if\ l!\ i = i\ then\ i\ else\ rep\text{-}of\ l\ (l!\ i))$ <proof>

<ML>

definition *ufa-invar* :: nat list ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:

$ufa\text{-}invar\ l = (\forall i < length\ l. rep\text{-}of\text{-}dom\ (l, i) \wedge l!\ i < length\ l)$

lemma *ufa-invarD*:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of-dom } (l, i) \wedge l ! i < \text{length } l$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *rep-of-id* [*rewrite*]: $ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies l ! i = i \implies \text{rep-of } l i = i$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *rep-of-iff* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l i = (\text{if } l ! i = i \text{ then } i \text{ else } \text{rep-of } l (l ! i))$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *rep-of-min* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies l ! (\text{rep-of } l i) = \text{rep-of } l i$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *rep-of-induct*:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \wedge i < \text{length } l \implies$
 $\forall i < \text{length } l. l ! i = i \longrightarrow P l i \implies$
 $\forall i < \text{length } l. l ! i \neq i \longrightarrow P l (l ! i) \longrightarrow P l i \implies P l i$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *rep-of-bound* [*forward-arg1*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l i < \text{length } l$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *rep-of-idem* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l (\text{rep-of } l i) = \text{rep-of } l i$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *rep-of-idx* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l (l ! i) = \text{rep-of } l i$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition *ufa- α* :: *nat list* \Rightarrow (*nat* \times *nat*) *set* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-}\alpha l = \{(x, y). x < \text{length } l \wedge y < \text{length } l \wedge \text{rep-of } l x = \text{rep-of } l y\}$

lemma *ufa- α -memI* [*backward*, *forward-arg*]:

$x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l x = \text{rep-of } l y \implies (x, y) \in ufa\text{-}\alpha l$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *ufa- α -memD* [*forward*]:

$(x, y) \in ufa\text{-}\alpha l \implies x < \text{length } l \wedge y < \text{length } l \wedge \text{rep-of } l x = \text{rep-of } l y$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *ufa- α -equiv* [*forward*]: *part-equiv* (*ufa- α* *l*) $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *ufa- α -refl* [*rewrite*]: $(i, i) \in ufa\text{-}\alpha l \iff i < \text{length } l$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

6.2 Operations on rep_of array

definition *uf-init-rel* :: *nat* \Rightarrow (*nat* \times *nat*) *set* **where** [*rewrite*]:
uf-init-rel *n* = *ufa- α* [*0..<n*]

lemma *ufa-init-invar* [*resolve*]: *ufa-invar* [*0..<n*] \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *ufa-init-correct* [*rewrite*]:
 $(x, y) \in \text{uf-init-rel } n \iff (x = y \wedge x < n)$
 \langle *proof* \rangle

abbreviation *ufa-union* :: *nat list* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat list* **where**
ufa-union *l x y* \equiv *l*[*rep-of l x := rep-of l y*]

lemma *ufa-union-invar* [*forward-arg*]:
ufa-invar l \implies $x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-union } l \ x \ y \implies$
ufa-invar l'
 \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *ufa-union-aux* [*rewrite*]:
ufa-invar l \implies $x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-union } l \ x \ y \implies$
 $i < \text{length } l' \implies \text{rep-of } l' \ i = (\text{if } \text{rep-of } l \ i = \text{rep-of } l \ x \ \text{then } \text{rep-of } l \ y \ \text{else } \text{rep-of } l \ i)$
 \langle *proof* \rangle

Correctness of union operation.

theorem *ufa-union-correct* [*rewrite*]:
ufa-invar l \implies $x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-union } l \ x \ y \implies$
ufa- α *l'* = *per-union* (*ufa- α* *l*) *x y*
 \langle *proof* \rangle

abbreviation *ufa-compress* :: *nat list* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat list* **where**
ufa-compress l x \equiv *l*[*x := rep-of l x*]

lemma *ufa-compress-invar* [*forward-arg*]:
ufa-invar l \implies $x < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-compress } l \ x \implies \text{ufa-invar } l'$
 \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *ufa-compress-aux* [*rewrite*]:
ufa-invar l \implies $x < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-compress } l \ x \implies i < \text{length } l' \implies$
 $\text{rep-of } l' \ i = \text{rep-of } l \ i$
 \langle *proof* \rangle

Correctness of compress operation.

theorem *ufa-compress-correct* [*rewrite*]:
ufa-invar l \implies $x < \text{length } l \implies \text{ufa-}\alpha$ (*ufa-compress l x*) = *ufa- α* *l* \langle *proof* \rangle

\langle *ML* \rangle

end

7 Connectedness for a set of undirected edges.

```

theory Connectivity
  imports Union-Find
begin

```

A simple application of union-find for graph connectivity.

```

fun is-path :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  nat) set  $\Rightarrow$  nat list  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  is-path n S [] = False
| is-path n S (x # xs) =
  (if xs = [] then x < n else ((x, hd xs)  $\in$  S  $\vee$  (hd xs, x)  $\in$  S)  $\wedge$  is-path n S xs)
<ML>

```

```

definition has-path :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  nat) set  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  bool where [rewrite]:
  has-path n S i j  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\exists p. \textit{is-path n S p} \wedge \textit{hd p} = i \wedge \textit{last p} = j$ )

```

```

lemma is-path-nonempty [forward]: is-path n S p  $\Longrightarrow$  p  $\neq$  [] <proof>

```

```

lemma nonempty-is-not-path [resolve]:  $\neg \textit{is-path n S []}$  <proof>

```

```

lemma is-path-extend [forward]:
  is-path n S p  $\Longrightarrow$  S  $\subseteq$  T  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n T p
<proof>

```

```

lemma has-path-extend [forward]:
  has-path n S i j  $\Longrightarrow$  S  $\subseteq$  T  $\Longrightarrow$  has-path n T i j <proof>

```

```

definition joinable :: nat list  $\Rightarrow$  nat list  $\Rightarrow$  bool where [rewrite]:
  joinable p q  $\longleftrightarrow$  (last p = hd q)

```

```

definition path-join :: nat list  $\Rightarrow$  nat list  $\Rightarrow$  nat list where [rewrite]:
  path-join p q = p @ tl q
<ML>

```

```

lemma path-join-hd [rewrite]: p  $\neq$  []  $\Longrightarrow$  hd (path-join p q) = hd p <proof>

```

```

lemma path-join-last [rewrite]: joinable p q  $\Longrightarrow$  q  $\neq$  []  $\Longrightarrow$  last (path-join p q) =
last q
<proof>

```

```

lemma path-join-is-path [backward]:
  joinable p q  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n S p  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n S q  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n S (path-join p q)
<proof>

```

```

lemma has-path-trans [forward]:
  has-path n S i j  $\Longrightarrow$  has-path n S j k  $\Longrightarrow$  has-path n S i k
<proof>

```

```

definition is-valid-graph :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  nat) set  $\Rightarrow$  bool where [rewrite]:
  is-valid-graph n S  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\forall p \in S. \textit{fst p} < n \wedge \textit{snd p} < n$ )

```

lemma *has-path-single1* [*backward1*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies (a, b) \in S \implies has-path\ n\ S\ a\ b$
 <proof>

lemma *has-path-single2* [*backward1*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies (a, b) \in S \implies has-path\ n\ S\ b\ a$
 <proof>

lemma *has-path-refl* [*backward2*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies a < n \implies has-path\ n\ S\ a\ a$
 <proof>

definition *connected-rel* :: $nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ set \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ set$ **where**
 $connected-rel\ n\ S = \{(a,b). has-path\ n\ S\ a\ b\}$

lemma *connected-rel-iff* [*rewrite*]:
 $(a, b) \in connected-rel\ n\ S \longleftrightarrow has-path\ n\ S\ a\ b$ <proof>

lemma *connected-rel-trans* [*forward*]:
 $trans\ (connected-rel\ n\ S)$ <proof>

lemma *connected-rel-refl* [*backward2*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies a < n \implies (a, a) \in connected-rel\ n\ S$ <proof>

lemma *is-path-per-union* [*rewrite*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\}) \implies$
 $has-path\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\})\ i\ j \longleftrightarrow (i, j) \in per-union\ (connected-rel\ n\ S)\ a\ b$
 <proof>

lemma *connected-rel-union* [*rewrite*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\}) \implies$
 $connected-rel\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\}) = per-union\ (connected-rel\ n\ S)\ a\ b$ <proof>

lemma *connected-rel-init* [*rewrite*]:
 $connected-rel\ n\ \{\} = uf-init-rel\ n$
 <proof>

fun *connected-rel-ind* :: $nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ set$ **where**
 $connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ 0 = uf-init-rel\ n$
 | $connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ (Suc\ k) =$
 $(let\ R = connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ k; p = es\ !\ k\ in$
 $per-union\ R\ (fst\ p)\ (snd\ p))$
 <ML>

lemma *connected-rel-ind-rule* [*rewrite*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (set\ es) \implies k \leq length\ es \implies$
 $connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ k = connected-rel\ n\ (set\ (take\ k\ es))$
 <proof>

Correctness of the functional algorithm.

theorem *connected-rel-ind-compute* [rewrite]:

is-valid-graph n (set *es*) \implies
connected-rel-ind n *es* (length *es*) = *connected-rel* n (set *es*) \langle proof \rangle

end

8 Arrays

theory *Arrays-Ex*

imports *Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main*

begin

Basic examples for arrays.

8.1 List swap

definition *list-swap* :: 'a list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a list **where** [rewrite]:

list-swap xs i j = $xs[i := xs ! j, j := xs ! i]$
 \langle ML \rangle

lemma *list-swap-eval*:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies$
 $(\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) ! k = (\text{if } k = i \ \text{then } xs ! j \ \text{else if } k = j \ \text{then } xs ! i \ \text{else } xs ! k)$
 \langle proof \rangle
 \langle ML \rangle

lemma *list-swap-eval-triv* [rewrite]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) ! i = xs ! j$
 $i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) ! j = xs ! i$ \langle proof \rangle

lemma *length-list-swap* [rewrite-arg]:

$\text{length } (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) = \text{length } xs$ \langle proof \rangle

lemma *mset-list-swap* [rewrite]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies \text{mset } (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) = \text{mset } xs$ \langle proof \rangle

lemma *set-list-swap* [rewrite]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies \text{set } (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) = \text{set } xs$ \langle proof \rangle
 \langle ML \rangle

8.2 Reverse

lemma *rev-nth* [rewrite]:

$n < \text{length } xs \implies \text{rev } xs ! n = xs ! (\text{length } xs - 1 - n)$
 \langle proof \rangle

fun *rev-swap* :: 'a list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a list **where**

$rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j = (if\ i < j\ then\ rev\text{-}swap\ (list\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j)\ (i + 1)\ (j - 1)\ else\ xs)$
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *rev-swap-length* [rewrite-arg]:
 $j < length\ xs \implies length\ (rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j) = length\ xs$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *rev-swap-eval* [rewrite]:
 $j < length\ xs \implies (rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j)\ !\ k =$
 $(if\ k < i\ then\ xs\ !\ k\ else\ if\ k > j\ then\ xs\ !\ k\ else\ xs\ !\ (j - (k - i)))$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *rev-swap-is-rev* [rewrite]:
 $length\ xs \geq 1 \implies rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ 0\ (length\ xs - 1) = rev\ xs$ ⟨proof⟩

8.3 Copy one array to the beginning of another

fun *array-copy* :: 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a list **where**
 $array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ 0 = xs'$
 $| array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ (Suc\ n) = list\text{-}update\ (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n)\ n\ (xs\ !\ n)$
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *array-copy-length* [rewrite-arg]:
 $n \leq length\ xs \implies n \leq length\ xs' \implies length\ (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n) = length\ xs'$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *array-copy-ind* [rewrite]:
 $n \leq length\ xs \implies n \leq length\ xs' \implies k < n \implies (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n)\ !\ k = xs\ !\ k$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *array-copy-correct* [rewrite]:
 $n \leq length\ xs \implies n \leq length\ xs' \implies take\ n\ (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n) = take\ n\ xs$
 ⟨proof⟩

8.4 Sublist

definition *sublist* :: nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list **where** [rewrite]:
 $sublist\ l\ r\ xs = drop\ l\ (take\ r\ xs)$
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *length-sublist* [rewrite-arg]:
 $r \leq length\ xs \implies length\ (sublist\ l\ r\ xs) = r - l$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *nth-sublist* [rewrite]:
 $r \leq length\ xs \implies xs' = sublist\ l\ r\ xs \implies i < length\ xs' \implies xs'\ !\ i = xs\ !\ (i + l)$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *sublist-nil* [rewrite]:

$r \leq \text{length } xs \implies r \leq l \implies \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs = []$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *sublist-0* [rewrite]:
 $\text{sublist } 0 \ l \ xs = \text{take } l \ xs$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *sublist-drop* [rewrite]:
 $\text{sublist } l \ r \ (\text{drop } n \ xs) = \text{sublist } (l + n) \ (r + n) \ xs$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *sublist-single* [rewrite]:
 $l + 1 \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{sublist } l \ (l + 1) \ xs = [xs ! l]$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *sublist-append* [rewrite]:
 $l \leq m \implies m \leq r \implies r \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{sublist } l \ m \ xs @ \text{sublist } m \ r \ xs = \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *sublist-Cons* [rewrite]:
 $r \leq \text{length } xs \implies l < r \implies xs ! l \# \text{sublist } (l + 1) \ r \ xs = \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *sublist-equalityI*:
 $i \leq j \implies j \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{length } xs = \text{length } ys \implies$
 $\forall k. i \leq k \longrightarrow k < j \longrightarrow xs ! k = ys ! k \implies \text{sublist } i \ j \ xs = \text{sublist } i \ j \ ys$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *set-sublist* [resolve]:
 $j \leq \text{length } xs \implies x \in \text{set } (\text{sublist } i \ j \ xs) \implies \exists k. k \geq i \wedge k < j \wedge x = xs ! k$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *list-take-sublist-drop-eq* [rewrite]:
 $l \leq r \implies r \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{take } l \ xs @ \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs @ \text{drop } r \ xs = xs$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

8.5 Updating a set of elements in an array

definition *list-update-set* :: $(\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{bool}) \Rightarrow (\text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list}$ **where**
[rewrite]:

$\text{list-update-set } S \ f \ xs = \text{list } (\lambda i. \text{if } S \ i \ \text{then } f \ i \ \text{else } xs ! i) \ (\text{length } xs)$

lemma *list-update-set-length* [rewrite-arg]:
 $\text{length } (\text{list-update-set } S \ f \ xs) = \text{length } xs$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *list-update-set-nth* [rewrite]:
 $xs' = \text{list-update-set } S \ f \ xs \implies i < \text{length } xs' \implies xs' ! i = (\text{if } S \ i \ \text{then } f \ i \ \text{else } xs ! i)$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

```

fun list-update-set-impl :: (nat  $\Rightarrow$  bool)  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list
where
  list-update-set-impl S f xs 0 = xs
| list-update-set-impl S f xs (Suc k) =
  (let xs' = list-update-set-impl S f xs k in
   if S k then xs' [k := f k] else xs')
⟨ML⟩

lemma list-update-set-impl-ind [rewrite]:
  n  $\leq$  length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  list-update-set-impl S f xs n =
  list ( $\lambda i$ . if i < n then if S i then f i else xs ! i else xs ! i) (length xs)
⟨proof⟩

lemma list-update-set-impl-correct [rewrite]:
  list-update-set-impl S f xs (length xs) = list-update-set S f xs ⟨proof⟩

end

```

9 Dijkstra's algorithm for shortest paths

```

theory Dijkstra
  imports Mapping-Str Arrays-Ex
begin

```

Verification of Dijkstra's algorithm: function part.

The algorithm is also verified by Nordhoff and Lammich in [8].

9.1 Graphs

```

datatype graph = Graph nat list list

```

```

fun size :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  nat where
  size (Graph G) = length G

```

```

fun weight :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat where
  weight (Graph G) m n = (G ! m) ! n

```

```

fun valid-graph :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  valid-graph (Graph G)  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\forall i < \text{length } G$ . length (G ! i) = length G)
⟨ML⟩

```

9.2 Paths on graphs

The set of vertices less than n.

```

definition verts :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  nat set where
  verts G = {i. i < size G}

```

lemma *verts-mem* [rewrite]: $i \in \text{verts } G \longleftrightarrow i < \text{size } G$ *<proof>*

lemma *card-verts* [rewrite]: $\text{card } (\text{verts } G) = \text{size } G$ *<proof>*

lemma *finite-verts* [forward]: $\text{finite } (\text{verts } G)$ *<proof>*

definition *is-path* :: $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$ **where** [rewrite]:

$\text{is-path } G p \longleftrightarrow p \neq [] \wedge \text{set } p \subseteq \text{verts } G$

lemma *is-path-to-in-verts* [forward]: $\text{is-path } G p \Longrightarrow \text{hd } p \in \text{verts } G \wedge \text{last } p \in \text{verts } G$

<proof>

definition *joinable* :: $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$ **where** [rewrite]:

$\text{joinable } G p q \longleftrightarrow (\text{is-path } G p \wedge \text{is-path } G q \wedge \text{last } p = \text{hd } q)$

definition *path-join* :: $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat list}$ **where** [rewrite]:

$\text{path-join } G p q = p @ \text{tl } q$

<ML>

lemma *path-join-is-path*:

$\text{joinable } G p q \Longrightarrow \text{is-path } G (\text{path-join } G p q)$

<proof>

<ML>

fun *path-weight* :: $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat}$ **where**

$\text{path-weight } G [] = 0$

| $\text{path-weight } G (x \# xs) = (\text{if } xs = [] \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \text{weight } G x (\text{hd } xs) + \text{path-weight } G xs)$

<ML>

lemma *path-weight-singleton* [rewrite]: $\text{path-weight } G [x] = 0$ *<proof>*

lemma *path-weight-doubleton* [rewrite]: $\text{path-weight } G [m, n] = \text{weight } G m n$ *<proof>*

lemma *path-weight-sum* [rewrite]:

$\text{joinable } G p q \Longrightarrow \text{path-weight } G (\text{path-join } G p q) = \text{path-weight } G p + \text{path-weight } G q$

<proof>

fun *path-set* :: $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat list set}$ **where**

$\text{path-set } G m n = \{p. \text{is-path } G p \wedge \text{hd } p = m \wedge \text{last } p = n\}$

lemma *path-set-mem* [rewrite]:

$p \in \text{path-set } G m n \longleftrightarrow \text{is-path } G p \wedge \text{hd } p = m \wedge \text{last } p = n$ *<proof>*

lemma *path-join-set*: $\text{joinable } G p q \Longrightarrow \text{path-join } G p q \in \text{path-set } G (\text{hd } p) (\text{last } q)$

<proof>

<ML>

9.3 Shortest paths

definition *is-shortest-path* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat list* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [rewrite]:

is-shortest-path *G m n p* \longleftrightarrow
 $(p \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n \wedge (\forall p' \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n. \text{path-weight } G \ p' \geq \text{path-weight } G \ p))$

lemma *is-shortest-pathD1* [forward]:

is-shortest-path *G m n p* $\Longrightarrow p \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n$ \langle proof \rangle

lemma *is-shortest-pathD2* [forward]:

is-shortest-path *G m n p* $\Longrightarrow p' \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n \Longrightarrow \text{path-weight } G \ p' \geq \text{path-weight } G \ p$ \langle proof \rangle
 \langle ML \rangle

definition *has-dist* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [rewrite]:

has-dist *G m n* $\longleftrightarrow (\exists p. \text{is-shortest-path } G \ m \ n \ p)$

lemma *has-distI* [forward]: *is-shortest-path* *G m n p* $\Longrightarrow \text{has-dist } G \ m \ n$ \langle proof \rangle

lemma *has-distD* [resolve]: *has-dist* *G m n* $\Longrightarrow \exists p. \text{is-shortest-path } G \ m \ n \ p$ \langle proof \rangle

lemma *has-dist-to-in-verts* [forward]: *has-dist* *G u v* $\Longrightarrow u \in \text{verts } G \wedge v \in \text{verts } G$ \langle proof \rangle

\langle ML \rangle

definition *dist* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* **where** [rewrite]:

dist *G m n* = *path-weight* *G* (*SOME* *p. is-shortest-path* *G m n p*)
 \langle ML \rangle

lemma *dist-eq* [rewrite]:

is-shortest-path *G m n p* $\Longrightarrow \text{dist } G \ m \ n = \text{path-weight } G \ p$ \langle proof \rangle

lemma *distD* [forward]:

has-dist *G m n* $\Longrightarrow p \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n \Longrightarrow \text{path-weight } G \ p \geq \text{dist } G \ m \ n$ \langle proof \rangle
 \langle ML \rangle

lemma *shortest-init* [resolve]: $n \in \text{verts } G \Longrightarrow \text{is-shortest-path } G \ n \ n \ [n]$ \langle proof \rangle

9.4 Interior points

List of interior points

definition *int-pts* :: *nat list* \Rightarrow *nat set* **where** [rewrite]:

int-pts *p* = *set* (*butlast* *p*)

lemma *int-pts-singleton* [rewrite]: *int-pts* [*x*] = {*x*} \langle proof \rangle

lemma *int-pts-doubleton* [rewrite]: *int-pts* [*x, y*] = {*x*} \langle proof \rangle

definition *path-set-on* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat set* \Rightarrow *nat list set* **where**

$path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = \{p. p \in path\text{-}set\ G\ m\ n \wedge int\text{-}pts\ p \subseteq V\}$

lemma *path-set-on-mem* [rewrite]:

$p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \longleftrightarrow p \in path\text{-}set\ G\ m\ n \wedge int\text{-}pts\ p \subseteq V$ ⟨proof⟩

Version of shortest path on a set of points

definition *is-shortest-path-on* :: $graph \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat\ list \Rightarrow nat\ set \Rightarrow bool$

where [rewrite]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \longleftrightarrow$
 $(p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \wedge (\forall p' \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V. path\text{-}weight\ G\ p' \geq path\text{-}weight\ G\ p))$

lemma *is-shortest-path-onD1* [forward]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *is-shortest-path-onD2* [forward]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow p' \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow path\text{-}weight\ G\ p' \geq path\text{-}weight\ G\ p$ ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

definition *has-dist-on* :: $graph \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat\ set \Rightarrow bool$ **where** [rewrite]:

$has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \longleftrightarrow (\exists p. is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V)$

lemma *has-dist-onI* [forward]: $is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *has-dist-onD* [resolve]: $has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow \exists p. is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V$ ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

definition *dist-on* :: $graph \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat\ set \Rightarrow nat$ **where** [rewrite]:

$dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = path\text{-}weight\ G\ (SOME\ p. is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V)$
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *dist-on-eq* [rewrite]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = path\text{-}weight\ G\ p$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *dist-onD* [forward]:

$has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow path\text{-}weight\ G\ p \geq dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V$ ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

9.5 Two splitting lemmas

lemma *path-split1* [backward]: $is\text{-}path\ G\ p \Longrightarrow hd\ p \in V \Longrightarrow last\ p \notin V \Longrightarrow$

$\exists p1\ p2. joinable\ G\ p1\ p2 \wedge p = path\text{-}join\ G\ p1\ p2 \wedge int\text{-}pts\ p1 \subseteq V \wedge hd\ p2 \notin V$

⟨proof⟩

lemma *path-split2* [backward]: $is\text{-}path\ G\ p \Longrightarrow hd\ p \neq last\ p \Longrightarrow$

$\exists q n. \text{joinable } G q [n, \text{last } p] \wedge p = \text{path-join } G q [n, \text{last } p]$
 ⟨proof⟩

9.6 Deriving `has__dist` and `has__dist__on`

definition `known-dists` :: `graph` \Rightarrow `nat set` \Rightarrow `bool` **where** [`rewrite`]:
 $\text{known-dists } G V \iff (V \subseteq \text{verts } G \wedge 0 \in V \wedge$
 $(\forall i \in \text{verts } G. \text{has-dist-on } G 0 i V) \wedge$
 $(\forall i \in V. \text{has-dist } G 0 i \wedge \text{dist } G 0 i = \text{dist-on } G 0 i V))$

lemma `derive-dist` [`backward2`]:
 $\text{known-dists } G V \implies$
 $m \in \text{verts } G - V \implies$
 $\forall i \in \text{verts } G - V. \text{dist-on } G 0 i V \geq \text{dist-on } G 0 m V \implies$
 $\text{has-dist } G 0 m \wedge \text{dist } G 0 m = \text{dist-on } G 0 m V$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma `join-def'` [`resolve`]: $\text{joinable } G p q \implies \text{path-join } G p q = \text{butlast } p @ q$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma `int-pts-join` [`rewrite`]:
 $\text{joinable } G p q \implies \text{int-pts } (\text{path-join } G p q) = \text{int-pts } p \cup \text{int-pts } q$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma `dist-on-triangle-ineq` [`backward`]:
 $\text{has-dist-on } G k m V \implies \text{has-dist-on } G k n V \implies V \subseteq \text{verts } G \implies n \in \text{verts } G \implies m \in V \implies$
 $\text{dist-on } G k m V + \text{weight } G m n \geq \text{dist-on } G k n V$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma `derive-dist-on` [`backward2`]:
 $\text{known-dists } G V \implies$
 $m \in \text{verts } G - V \implies$
 $\forall i \in \text{verts } G - V. \text{dist-on } G 0 i V \geq \text{dist-on } G 0 m V \implies$
 $V' = V \cup \{m\} \implies$
 $n \in \text{verts } G - V' \implies$
 $\text{has-dist-on } G 0 n V' \wedge \text{dist-on } G 0 n V' = \min (\text{dist-on } G 0 n V) (\text{dist-on } G 0 m V + \text{weight } G m n)$
 ⟨proof⟩

9.7 Invariant for the Dijkstra's algorithm

The state consists of an array maintaining the best estimates, and a heap containing estimates for the unknown vertices.

datatype `state` = `State` (`est`: `nat list`) (`heap`: (`nat`, `nat`) `map`)
 ⟨ML⟩

definition `unknown-set` :: `state` \Rightarrow `nat set` **where** [`rewrite`]:
 $\text{unknown-set } S = \text{keys-of } (\text{heap } S)$

definition *known-set* :: *state* \Rightarrow *nat set* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$\text{known-set } S = \{..<\text{length } (\text{est } S)\} - \text{unknown-set } S$$

Invariant: for every vertex, the estimate is at least the shortest distance.
Furthermore, for the known vertices the estimate is exact.

definition *inv* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *state* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{inv } G \ S \longleftrightarrow & (\text{let } V = \text{known-set } S; W = \text{unknown-set } S; M = \text{heap } S \text{ in} \\ & (\text{length } (\text{est } S) = \text{size } G \wedge \text{known-dists } G \ V \wedge \\ & \text{keys-of } M \subseteq \text{verts } G \wedge \\ & (\forall i \in W. M(i) = \text{Some } (\text{est } S ! i)) \wedge \\ & (\forall i \in V. \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist } G \ 0 \ i) \wedge \\ & (\forall i \in \text{verts } G. \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist-on } G \ 0 \ i \ V))) \end{aligned}$$

lemma *invE1* [*forward*]: $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow \text{length } (\text{est } S) = \text{size } G \wedge \text{known-dists } G$
($\text{known-set } S$) \wedge $\text{unknown-set } S \subseteq \text{verts } G$ *<proof>*

lemma *invE2* [*forward*]: $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow i \in \text{known-set } S \Longrightarrow \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist } G \ 0 \ i$
<proof>

lemma *invE3* [*forward*]: $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow i \in \text{verts } G \Longrightarrow \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist-on } G \ 0 \ i$
($\text{known-set } S$) *<proof>*

lemma *invE4* [*rewrite*]: $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow i \in \text{unknown-set } S \Longrightarrow (\text{heap } S)(i) = \text{Some}$
($\text{est } S ! i$) *<proof>*
<ML>

lemma *inv-unknown-set* [*rewrite*]:

$$\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow \text{unknown-set } S = \text{verts } G - \text{known-set } S \text{ } \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *dijkstra-end-inv* [*forward*]:

$$\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow \text{unknown-set } S = \{\} \Longrightarrow \forall i \in \text{verts } G. \text{has-dist } G \ 0 \ i \wedge \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist } G \ 0 \ i \text{ } \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

9.8 Starting state

definition *dijkstra-start-state* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *state* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{dijkstra-start-state } G = & \\ & \text{State } (\text{list } (\lambda i. \text{if } i = 0 \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) (\text{size } G)) \\ & (\text{map-constr } (\lambda i. i > 0) (\lambda i. \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) (\text{size } G)) \end{aligned}$$

<ML>

lemma *dijkstra-start-known-set* [*rewrite*]:

$$\text{size } G > 0 \Longrightarrow \text{known-set } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G) = \{0\} \text{ } \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *dijkstra-start-unknown-set* [*rewrite*]:

$$\text{size } G > 0 \Longrightarrow \text{unknown-set } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G) = \text{verts } G - \{0\} \text{ } \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *card-start-state* [*rewrite*]:

$$\text{size } G > 0 \Longrightarrow \text{card } (\text{unknown-set } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G)) = \text{size } G - 1 \text{ } \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

Starting start of Dijkstra's algorithm satisfies the invariant.

theorem *dijkstra-start-inv* [*backward*]:
 $size\ G > 0 \implies inv\ G\ (dijkstra\text{-}start\text{-}state\ G)$
 ⟨*proof*⟩

9.9 Step of Dijkstra's algorithm

fun *dijkstra-step* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *state* \Rightarrow *state* **where**
 $dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ (State\ e\ M) =$
 (let $M' = delete\text{-}map\ m\ M;$
 $e' = list\text{-}update\text{-}set\ (\lambda i. i \in keys\text{-}of\ M')\ (\lambda i. min\ (e\ !\ m + weight\ G\ m\ i)$
 $(e\ !\ i))\ e;$
 $M'' = map\text{-}update\text{-}all\ (\lambda i. e'\ !\ i)\ M'$
 in $State\ e'\ M''$)
 ⟨*ML*⟩

lemma *has-dist-on-larger* [*backward1*]:
 $has\text{-}dist\ G\ m\ n \implies has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \implies dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = dist\ G\ m\ n$
 \implies
 $has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ (V \cup \{x\}) \wedge dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ (V \cup \{x\}) = dist\ G\ m\ n$
 ⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *dijkstra-step-unknown-set* [*rewrite*]:
 $inv\ G\ S \implies m \in unknown\text{-}set\ S \implies unknown\text{-}set\ (dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S) =$
 $unknown\text{-}set\ S - \{m\}$ ⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *dijkstra-step-known-set* [*rewrite*]:
 $inv\ G\ S \implies m \in unknown\text{-}set\ S \implies known\text{-}set\ (dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S) = known\text{-}set$
 $S \cup \{m\}$ ⟨*proof*⟩

One step of Dijkstra's algorithm preserves the invariant.

theorem *dijkstra-step-preserves-inv* [*backward*]:
 $inv\ G\ S \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}min\ m\ (heap\ S) \implies inv\ G\ (dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S)$
 ⟨*proof*⟩

definition *is-dijkstra-step* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *state* \Rightarrow *state* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:
 $is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S' \iff (\exists m. is\text{-}heap\text{-}min\ m\ (heap\ S) \wedge S' = dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S)$

lemma *is-dijkstra-stepI* [*backward2*]:
 $is\text{-}heap\text{-}min\ m\ (heap\ S) \implies dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S = S' \implies is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S'$
 ⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *is-dijkstra-stepD1* [*forward*]:
 $inv\ G\ S \implies is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S' \implies inv\ G\ S'$ ⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *is-dijkstra-stepD2* [*forward*]:
 $inv\ G\ S \implies is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S' \implies card\ (unknown\text{-}set\ S') = card\ (unknown\text{-}set$
 $S) - 1$ ⟨*proof*⟩
 ⟨*ML*⟩

end

10 Intervals

theory *Interval*
 imports *Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main*
begin

Basic definition of intervals.

10.1 Definition of interval

datatype *'a interval* = *Interval* (*low*: 'a) (*high*: 'a)
(*ML*)

instantiation *interval* :: (*linorder*) *linorder* **begin**

definition *int-less*: ($a < b$) = ($low\ a < low\ b \mid (low\ a = low\ b \wedge high\ a < high\ b)$)

definition *int-less-eq*: ($a \leq b$) = ($low\ a < low\ b \mid (low\ a = low\ b \wedge high\ a \leq high\ b)$)

instance (*proof*) **end**

definition *is-interval* :: (*'a::linorder*) *interval* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:
 is-interval *it* \longleftrightarrow ($low\ it \leq high\ it$)

10.2 Definition of interval with an index

datatype *'a idx-interval* = *IdxInterval* (*int*: 'a *interval*) (*idx*: *nat*)
(*ML*)

instantiation *idx-interval* :: (*linorder*) *linorder* **begin**

definition *iint-less*: ($a < b$) = ($int\ a < int\ b \mid (int\ a = int\ b \wedge idx\ a < idx\ b)$)

definition *iint-less-eq*: ($a \leq b$) = ($int\ a < int\ b \mid (int\ a = int\ b \wedge idx\ a \leq idx\ b)$)

instance (*proof*) **end**

lemma *interval-less-to-le-low* [*forward*]:
 ($a::('a::linorder\ idx-interval)$) $< b \implies low\ (int\ a) \leq low\ (int\ b)$
 (*proof*)

10.3 Overlapping intervals

definition *is-overlap* :: (*'a::linorder*) *interval* \Rightarrow 'a *interval* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:
 is-overlap *x y* \longleftrightarrow ($high\ x \geq low\ y \wedge high\ y \geq low\ x$)

definition *has-overlap* :: ('a::linorder) *idx-interval set* \Rightarrow 'a *interval* \Rightarrow bool **where**
 [rewrite]:

has-overlap xs y \longleftrightarrow ($\exists x \in xs. is-overlap (int x) y$)

end

11 Interval tree

theory *Interval-Tree*

imports *Lists-Ex Interval*

begin

Functional version of interval tree. This is an augmented data structure on top of regular binary search trees (see *BST.thy*). See [2, Section 14.3] for a reference.

11.1 Definition of an interval tree

datatype *interval-tree* =

Tip

| *Node* (*lsub*: *interval-tree*) (*val*: nat *idx-interval*) (*tmax*: nat) (*rsub*: *interval-tree*)

where

tmax Tip = 0

$\langle ML \rangle$

11.2 Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree

fun *in-traverse* :: *interval-tree* \Rightarrow nat *idx-interval list* **where**

in-traverse Tip = []

| *in-traverse* (*Node l it m r*) = *in-traverse l* @ *it* # *in-traverse r*

$\langle ML \rangle$

fun *tree-set* :: *interval-tree* \Rightarrow nat *idx-interval set* **where**

tree-set Tip = {}

| *tree-set* (*Node l it m r*) = {*it*} \cup *tree-set l* \cup *tree-set r*

$\langle ML \rangle$

fun *tree-sorted* :: *interval-tree* \Rightarrow bool **where**

tree-sorted Tip = True

| *tree-sorted* (*Node l it m r*) = (($\forall x \in tree-set l. x < it$) \wedge ($\forall x \in tree-set r. it < x$)
 $\wedge tree-sorted l \wedge tree-sorted r$)

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *tree-sorted-lr* [*forward*]:

tree-sorted (*Node l it m r*) \Longrightarrow *tree-sorted l* \wedge *tree-sorted r* $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *tree-sortedD1* [*forward*]:

tree-sorted (*Node l it m r*) \Longrightarrow $x \in tree-set l \Longrightarrow x < it$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *tree-sortedD2* [forward]:
 $tree\text{-sorted} (Node\ l\ it\ m\ r) \implies x \in tree\text{-set}\ r \implies x > it$ <proof>

lemma *inorder-preserve-set* [rewrite]:
 $tree\text{-set}\ t = set\ (in\text{-traverse}\ t)$
 <proof>

lemma *inorder-sorted* [rewrite]:
 $tree\text{-sorted}\ t \iff strict\text{-sorted}\ (in\text{-traverse}\ t)$
 <proof>

Use definition in terms of `in_traverse` from now on.

<ML>

11.3 Invariant on the maximum

definition *max3* :: $nat\ idx\text{-interval} \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat$ **where** [rewrite]:
 $max3\ it\ b\ c = max\ (high\ (int\ it))\ (max\ b\ c)$

fun *tree-max-inv* :: $interval\text{-tree} \Rightarrow bool$ **where**
 $tree\text{-max-inv}\ Tip = True$
 $| tree\text{-max-inv}\ (Node\ l\ it\ m\ r) \iff (tree\text{-max-inv}\ l \wedge tree\text{-max-inv}\ r \wedge m = max3\ it\ (tmax\ l)\ (tmax\ r))$
 <ML>

lemma *tree-max-is-max* [resolve]:
 $tree\text{-max-inv}\ t \implies it \in tree\text{-set}\ t \implies high\ (int\ it) \leq tmax\ t$
 <proof>

lemma *tmax-exists* [backward]:
 $tree\text{-max-inv}\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies \exists p \in tree\text{-set}\ t. high\ (int\ p) = tmax\ t$
 <proof>

For insertion

lemma *max3-insert* [rewrite]: $max3\ it\ 0\ 0 = high\ (int\ it)$ <proof>

<ML>

11.4 Condition on the values

definition *tree-interval-inv* :: $interval\text{-tree} \Rightarrow bool$ **where** [rewrite]:
 $tree\text{-interval-inv}\ t \iff (\forall p \in tree\text{-set}\ t. is\text{-interval}\ (int\ p))$

definition *is-interval-tree* :: $interval\text{-tree} \Rightarrow bool$ **where** [rewrite]:
 $is\text{-interval-tree}\ t \iff (tree\text{-sorted}\ t \wedge tree\text{-max-inv}\ t \wedge tree\text{-interval-inv}\ t)$

lemma *is-interval-tree-lr* [forward]:
 $is\text{-interval-tree}\ (Node\ l\ x\ m\ r) \implies is\text{-interval-tree}\ l \wedge is\text{-interval-tree}\ r$ <proof>

11.5 Insertion on trees

fun *insert* :: *nat idx-interval* \Rightarrow *interval-tree* \Rightarrow *interval-tree* **where**
insert *x* *Tip* = *Node* *Tip* *x* (*high* (*int* *x*)) *Tip*
| *insert* *x* (*Node* *l* *y* *m* *r*) =
 (*if* *x* = *y* *then* *Node* *l* *y* *m* *r*
 else if *x* < *y* *then*
 let *l'* = *insert* *x* *l* *in*
 Node *l'* *y* (*max3* *y* (*tmax* *l'*) (*tmax* *r*)) *r*
 else
 let *r'* = *insert* *x* *r* *in*
 Node *l* *y* (*max3* *y* (*tmax* *l*) (*tmax* *r'*)) *r'*)
⟨ML⟩

lemma *tree-insert-in-traverse* [*rewrite*]:
tree-sorted *t* \Longrightarrow *in-traverse* (*insert* *x* *t*) = *ordered-insert* *x* (*in-traverse* *t*)
⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *tree-insert-max-inv* [*forward*]:
tree-max-inv *t* \Longrightarrow *tree-max-inv* (*insert* *x* *t*)
⟨*proof*⟩

Correctness of insertion.

theorem *tree-insert-all-inv* [*forward*]:
is-interval-tree *t* \Longrightarrow *is-interval* (*int* *it*) \Longrightarrow *is-interval-tree* (*insert* *it* *t*) ⟨*proof*⟩

theorem *tree-insert-on-set* [*rewrite*]:
tree-sorted *t* \Longrightarrow *tree-set* (*insert* *it* *t*) = {*it*} \cup *tree-set* *t* ⟨*proof*⟩

11.6 Deletion on trees

fun *del-min* :: *interval-tree* \Rightarrow *nat idx-interval* \times *interval-tree* **where**
del-min *Tip* = *undefined*
| *del-min* (*Node* *lt* *v* *m* *rt*) =
 (*if* *lt* = *Tip* *then* (*v*, *rt*) *else*
 let *lt'* = *snd* (*del-min* *lt*) *in*
 (*fst* (*del-min* *lt*), *Node* *lt'* *v* (*max3* *v* (*tmax* *lt'*) (*tmax* *rt*)) *rt*))
⟨ML⟩

lemma *delete-min-del-hd*:
t \neq *Tip* \Longrightarrow *fst* (*del-min* *t*) $\#$ *in-traverse* (*snd* (*del-min* *t*)) = *in-traverse* *t*
⟨*proof*⟩
⟨ML⟩

lemma *delete-min-max-inv* [*forward-arg*]:
tree-max-inv *t* \Longrightarrow *t* \neq *Tip* \Longrightarrow *tree-max-inv* (*snd* (*del-min* *t*))
⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *delete-min-on-set*:
t \neq *Tip* \Longrightarrow {*fst* (*del-min* *t*)} \cup *tree-set* (*snd* (*del-min* *t*)) = *tree-set* *t* ⟨*proof*⟩

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *delete-min-interval-inv* [forward-arg]:

$tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ (snd\ (del\text{-}min\ t))$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *delete-min-all-inv* [forward-arg]:

$is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ (snd\ (del\text{-}min\ t))$ $\langle proof \rangle$

fun *delete-elt-tree* :: *interval-tree* \Rightarrow *interval-tree* **where**

delete-elt-tree *Tip* = *undefined*
| *delete-elt-tree* (*Node* *lt* *x* *m* *rt*) =
 (*if* *lt* = *Tip* *then* *rt* *else if* *rt* = *Tip* *then* *lt* *else*
 let *x'* = *fst* (*del-min* *rt*);
 rt' = *snd* (*del-min* *rt*);
 m' = *max3* *x'* (*tmax* *lt*) (*tmax* *rt'*) *in*
 Node *lt* (*fst* (*del-min* *rt*)) *m'* *rt'*)

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *delete-elt-in-traverse* [rewrite]:

$in\text{-}traverse\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ (Node\ lt\ x\ m\ rt)) = in\text{-}traverse\ lt\ @\ in\text{-}traverse\ rt$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *delete-elt-max-inv* [forward-arg]:

$tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ t)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *delete-elt-on-set* [rewrite]:

$t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}set\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ (Node\ lt\ x\ m\ rt)) = tree\text{-}set\ lt\ \cup\ tree\text{-}set\ rt$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *delete-elt-interval-inv* [forward-arg]:

$tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ t)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *delete-elt-all-inv* [forward-arg]:

$is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ t)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

fun *delete* :: *nat* *idx-interval* \Rightarrow *interval-tree* \Rightarrow *interval-tree* **where**

delete *x* *Tip* = *Tip*
| *delete* *x* (*Node* *l* *y* *m* *r*) =
 (*if* *x* = *y* *then* *delete-elt-tree* (*Node* *l* *y* *m* *r*)
 else if *x* < *y* *then*
 let *l'* = *delete* *x* *l*;
 m' = *max3* *y* (*tmax* *l'*) (*tmax* *r*) *in* *Node* *l'* *y* *m'* *r*
 else
 let *r'* = *delete* *x* *r*;
 m' = *max3* *y* (*tmax* *l*) (*tmax* *r'*) *in* *Node* *l* *y* *m'* *r'*)

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *tree-delete-in-traverse* [rewrite]:

$tree\text{-}sorted\ t \implies in\text{-}traverse\ (delete\ x\ t) = remove\text{-}elt\text{-}list\ x\ (in\text{-}traverse\ t)$

<proof>

lemma *tree-delete-max-inv* [*forward*]:
 $tree-max-inv\ t \implies tree-max-inv\ (delete\ x\ t)$
<proof>

Correctness of deletion.

theorem *tree-delete-all-inv* [*forward*]:
 $is-interval-tree\ t \implies is-interval-tree\ (delete\ x\ t)$
<proof>

theorem *tree-delete-on-set* [*rewrite*]:
 $tree-sorted\ t \implies tree-set\ (delete\ x\ t) = tree-set\ t - \{x\}$ *<proof>*

11.7 Search on interval trees

fun *search* :: *interval-tree* \Rightarrow *nat interval* \Rightarrow *bool* **where**
 search *Tip* *x* = *False*
| *search* (*Node* *l* *y* *m* *r*) *x* =
 (*if* *is-overlap* (*int* *y*) *x* *then* *True*
 else *if* *l* \neq *Tip* \wedge *tmax* *l* \geq *low* *x* *then* *search* *l* *x*
 else *search* *r* *x*)
<ML>

Correctness of search

theorem *search-correct* [*rewrite*]:
 $is-interval-tree\ t \implies is-interval\ x \implies search\ t\ x \longleftrightarrow has-overlap\ (tree-set\ t)\ x$
<proof>

end

12 Quicksort

theory *Quicksort*
 imports *Arrays-Ex*
begin

Functional version of quicksort.

Implementation of quicksort is largely based on theory *Imperative_Quicksort* in *HOL/Imperative_HOL/ex* in the Isabelle library.

12.1 Outer remains

definition *outer-remains* :: '*a list* \Rightarrow '*a list* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:
 $outer-remains\ xs\ xs'\ l\ r \longleftrightarrow (length\ xs = length\ xs' \wedge (\forall i. i < l \vee r < i \longrightarrow xs\ !\ i = xs'\ !\ i))$

lemma *outer-remains-length* [*forward*]:

$outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies length \ xs = length \ xs' \ \langle proof \rangle$

lemma *outer-remains-eq* [rewrite-back]:

$outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies i < l \implies xs \ ! \ i = xs' \ ! \ i$
 $outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies r < i \implies xs \ ! \ i = xs' \ ! \ i \ \langle proof \rangle$

lemma *outer-remains-sublist* [backward2]:

$outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies i < l \implies take \ i \ xs = take \ i \ xs'$
 $outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies r < i \implies drop \ i \ xs = drop \ i \ xs'$
 $i \leq j \implies j \leq length \ xs \implies outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies j \leq l \implies sublist \ i \ j \ xs$
 $= sublist \ i \ j \ xs'$
 $i \leq j \implies j \leq length \ xs \implies outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies i > r \implies sublist \ i \ j \ xs$
 $= sublist \ i \ j \ xs' \ \langle proof \rangle$
 (ML)

12.2 part1 function

function *part1* :: ('a::linorder) list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow (nat \times 'a list) **where**

$part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a =$
 if $r \leq l$ then (r, xs)
 else if $xs \ ! \ l \leq a$ then $part1 \ xs \ (l + 1) \ r \ a$
 else $part1 \ (list\text{-swap } xs \ l \ r) \ l \ (r - 1) \ a$

$\langle proof \rangle$

termination $\langle proof \rangle$

(ML)

lemma *part1-basic*:

$r < length \ xs \implies l \leq r \implies (rs, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a \implies$
 $outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \wedge mset \ xs' = mset \ xs \wedge l \leq rs \wedge rs \leq r$

$\langle proof \rangle$

(ML)

lemma *part1-partitions1* [backward]:

$r < length \ xs \implies (rs, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a \implies l \leq i \implies i < rs \implies xs' \ ! \ i \leq a$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *part1-partitions2* [backward]:

$r < length \ xs \implies (rs, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a \implies rs < i \implies i \leq r \implies xs' \ ! \ i \geq a$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

12.3 Paritition function

definition *partition* :: ('a::linorder list) \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow (nat \times 'a list) **where**
 [rewrite]:

$partition \ xs \ l \ r =$
 let $p = xs \ ! \ r$;
 $(m, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ (r - 1) \ p$;
 $m' =$ if $xs' \ ! \ m \leq p$ then $m + 1$ else m
 in
 $(m', list\text{-swap } xs' \ m' \ r)$

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *partition-basic*:

$l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies (rs, xs') = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies$
 $\text{outer-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \wedge \text{mset } xs' = \text{mset } xs \wedge l \leq rs \wedge rs \leq r \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *partition-partitions1* [forward]:

$l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies (rs, xs') = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies$
 $x \in \text{set } (\text{sublist } l \ rs \ xs') \implies x \leq xs' \ ! \ rs$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *partition-partitions2* [forward]:

$l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies (rs, xs'') = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies$
 $x \in \text{set } (\text{sublist } (rs + 1) \ (r + 1) \ xs'') \implies x \geq xs'' \ ! \ rs$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *quicksort-term1*:

$\neg r \leq l \implies \neg \text{length } xs \leq r \implies x = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies (p, xs1) = x \implies p -$
 $\text{Suc } l < r - l$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *quicksort-term2*:

$\neg r \leq l \implies \neg \text{length } xs \leq r \implies x = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies (p, xs2) = x \implies r -$
 $\text{Suc } p < r - l$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

12.4 Quicksort function

function *quicksort* :: ('a::linorder) list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a list **where**

quicksort $xs \ l \ r =$ (
 if $l \geq r$ then xs
 else if $r \geq \text{length } xs$ then xs
 else let
 $(p, xs1) = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r;$
 $xs2 = \text{quicksort } xs1 \ l \ (p - 1)$
 in
 $\text{quicksort } xs2 \ (p + 1) \ r$)

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$ **termination** $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *quicksort-basic* [rewrite-arg]:

$\text{mset } (\text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r) = \text{mset } xs \wedge \text{outer-remains } xs \ (\text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r) \ l \ r$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *quicksort-trivial1* [rewrite]:

$l \geq r \implies \text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r = xs$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *quicksort-trivial2* [rewrite]:

$r \geq \text{length } xs \implies \text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r = xs$
<proof>

lemma *quicksort-permutes* [resolve]:

$xs' = \text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r \implies \text{set } (\text{sublist } l \ (r + 1) \ xs') = \text{set } (\text{sublist } l \ (r + 1) \ xs)$
<proof>

lemma *quicksort-sorts* [forward-arg]:

$r < \text{length } xs \implies \text{sorted } (\text{sublist } l \ (r + 1) \ (\text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r))$
<proof>

Main result: correctness of functional quicksort.

theorem *quicksort-sorts-all* [rewrite]:

$xs \neq [] \implies \text{quicksort } xs \ 0 \ (\text{length } xs - 1) = \text{sort } xs$
<proof>

end

13 Indexed priority queues

theory *Indexed-PQueue*

imports *Arrays-Ex Mapping-Str*

begin

Verification of indexed priority queue: functional part. The data structure is also verified by Lammich in [4].

13.1 Successor functions, eq-pred predicate

fun *s1* :: *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* **where** *s1* *m* = 2 * *m* + 1

fun *s2* :: *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* **where** *s2* *m* = 2 * *m* + 2

lemma *s-inj* [forward]:

$s1 \ m = s1 \ m' \implies m = m' \ s2 \ m = s2 \ m' \implies m = m'$ <proof>

lemma *s-neq* [resolve]:

$s1 \ m \neq s2 \ m' \ s1 \ m > m \ s2 \ m > m \ s2 \ m > s1 \ m$ <proof>
<ML>

inductive *eq-pred* :: *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *bool* **where**

eq-pred *n* *n*
| *eq-pred* *n* *m* \implies *eq-pred* *n* (*s1* *m*)
| *eq-pred* *n* *m* \implies *eq-pred* *n* (*s2* *m*)
<ML>

lemma *eq-pred-parent1* [forward]:

$\text{eq-pred } i \ (s1 \ k) \implies i \neq s1 \ k \implies \text{eq-pred } i \ k$
<proof>

lemma *eq-pred-parent2* [forward]:
 $eq\text{-}pred\ i\ (s2\ k) \implies i \neq s2\ k \implies eq\text{-}pred\ i\ k$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *eq-pred-cases*:
 $eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \implies eq\text{-}pred\ (s1\ i)\ j \vee eq\text{-}pred\ (s2\ i)\ j \vee j = i \vee j = s1\ i \vee j = s2\ i$
 ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *eq-pred-le* [forward]: $eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \implies i \leq j$
 ⟨proof⟩

13.2 Heap property

The corresponding tree is a heap

definition *is-heap* :: ('a × 'b::linorder) list ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:
 $is\text{-}heap\ xs = (\forall i\ j. eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \longrightarrow j < length\ xs \longrightarrow snd\ (xs\ !\ i) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ j))$

lemma *is-heapD*:
 $is\text{-}heap\ xs \implies j < length\ xs \implies eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ i) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ j)$ ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

13.3 Bubble-down

The corresponding tree is a heap, except k is not necessarily smaller than its descendents.

definition *is-heap-partial1* :: ('a × 'b::linorder) list ⇒ nat ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:
 $is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k = (\forall i\ j. eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \longrightarrow i \neq k \longrightarrow j < length\ xs \longrightarrow snd\ (xs\ !\ i) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ j))$

Two cases of switching with s1 k.

lemma *bubble-down1*:
 $s1\ k < length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ k) > snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) \implies$
 $snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ s2\ k) \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ (list\text{-}swap\ xs\ k\ (s1\ k))\ (s1\ k)$ ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *bubble-down2*:
 $s1\ k < length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ k) > snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) \implies$
 $s2\ k \geq length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ (list\text{-}swap\ xs\ k\ (s1\ k))\ (s1\ k)$ ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

One case of switching with s2 k.

lemma *bubble-down3*:
 $s2\ k < length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) > snd\ (xs\ !\ s2\ k)$
 \implies

$snd (xs ! k) > snd (xs ! s2 k) \implies xs' = list\text{-}swap\ xs\ k\ (s2\ k) \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs'\ (s2\ k)$ *<proof>*
<ML>

13.4 Bubble-up

fun *par* :: *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* **where**
par *m* = (*m* - 1) *div* 2
<ML>

lemma *ps-inverse* [*rewrite*]: *par* (*s1* *k*) = *k* *par* (*s2* *k*) = *k* *<proof>*

lemma *p-basic*: *m* \neq 0 \implies *par* *m* < *m* *<proof>*
<ML>

lemma *p-cases*: *m* \neq 0 \implies *m* = *s1* (*par* *m*) \vee *m* = *s2* (*par* *m*) *<proof>*
<ML>

lemma *eq-pred-p-next*:
i \neq 0 \implies *eq-pred* *i* *j* \implies *eq-pred* (*par* *i*) *j*
<proof>
<ML>

lemma *heap-implies-hd-min* [*resolve*]:
is-heap *xs* \implies *i* < *length* *xs* \implies *xs* \neq [] \implies *snd* (*hd* *xs*) \leq *snd* (*xs* ! *i*)
<proof>

The corresponding tree is a heap, except *k* is not necessarily greater than its ancestors.

definition *is-heap-partial2* :: (*'a* \times *'b::linorder*) *list* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:
is-heap-partial2 *xs* *k* = (\forall *i* *j*. *eq-pred* *i* *j* \longrightarrow *j* < *length* *xs* \longrightarrow *j* \neq *k* \longrightarrow *snd* (*xs* ! *i*) \leq *snd* (*xs* ! *j*))

lemma *bubble-up1* [*forward*]:
k < *length* *xs* \implies *is-heap-partial2* *xs* *k* \implies *snd* (*xs* ! *k*) < *snd* (*xs* ! *par* *k*) \implies *k* \neq 0 \implies
is-heap-partial2 (*list-swap* *xs* *k* (*par* *k*)) (*par* *k*) *<proof>*

lemma *bubble-up2* [*forward*]:
k < *length* *xs* \implies *is-heap-partial2* *xs* *k* \implies *snd* (*xs* ! *k*) \geq *snd* (*xs* ! *par* *k*) \implies *k* \neq 0 \implies
is-heap *xs* *<proof>*
<ML>

13.5 Indexed priority queue

type-synonym *'a* *idx-pqueue* = (*nat* \times *'a*) *list* \times *nat* *option* *list*

fun *index-of-pqueue* :: *'a* *idx-pqueue* \Rightarrow *bool* **where**

$index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) = ($
 $\quad (\forall i < \text{length } xs. \text{fst } (xs ! i) < \text{length } m \wedge m ! (\text{fst } (xs ! i)) = \text{Some } i) \wedge$
 $\quad (\forall i. \forall k < \text{length } m. m ! k = \text{Some } i \longrightarrow i < \text{length } xs \wedge \text{fst } (xs ! i) = k)$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *index-of-pqueueD1*:
 $i < \text{length } xs \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$
 $\quad \text{fst } (xs ! i) < \text{length } m \wedge m ! (\text{fst } (xs ! i)) = \text{Some } i \langle proof \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *index-of-pqueueD2* [forward]:
 $k < \text{length } m \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$
 $\quad m ! k = \text{Some } i \implies i < \text{length } xs \wedge \text{fst } (xs ! i) = k \langle proof \rangle$

lemma *index-of-pqueueD3* [forward]:
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies p \in \text{set } xs \implies \text{fst } p < \text{length } m$
 $\langle proof \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *has-index-unique-key* [forward]:
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies \text{unique}\text{-keys}\text{-set } (\text{set } xs)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *has-index-keys-of* [rewrite]:
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies \text{has}\text{-key}\text{-alist } xs \ k \longleftrightarrow (k < \text{length } m \wedge m ! k \neq$
 $\text{None})$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *has-index-distinct* [forward]:
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies \text{distinct } xs$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

13.6 Basic operations on indexed_queue

fun *idx-pqueue-swap-fun* :: $(\text{nat} \times 'a) \text{ list} \times \text{nat option list} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow (\text{nat}$
 $\times 'a) \text{ list} \times \text{nat option list}$ **where**
 $\quad \text{idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-swap}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j = ($
 $\quad \text{list}\text{-swap } xs \ i \ j, ((m [\text{fst } (xs ! i) := \text{Some } j]) [\text{fst } (xs ! j) := \text{Some } i]))$

lemma *index-of-pqueue-swap* [forward-arg]:
 $i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$
 $\quad index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (\text{idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-swap}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *fst-idx-pqueue-swap* [rewrite]:
 $\text{fst } (\text{idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-swap}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j) = \text{list}\text{-swap } xs \ i \ j$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *snd-idx-pqueue-swap* [rewrite]:

$\text{length } (\text{snd } (\text{idx-pqueue-swap-fun } (xs, m) i j)) = \text{length } m$
 <proof>

fun *idx-pqueue-push-fun* :: $\text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a \text{ idx-pqueue} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ idx-pqueue}$ **where**
idx-pqueue-push-fun $k v (xs, m) = (xs @ [(k, v)], \text{list-update } m k (\text{Some } (\text{length } xs)))$

lemma *idx-pqueue-push-correct* [*forward-arg*]:
 $\text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m) \Longrightarrow k < \text{length } m \Longrightarrow \neg \text{has-key-alist } xs k \Longrightarrow$
 $r = \text{idx-pqueue-push-fun } k v (xs, m) \Longrightarrow$
 $\text{index-of-pqueue } r \wedge \text{fst } r = xs @ [(k, v)] \wedge \text{length } (\text{snd } r) = \text{length } m$
 <proof>

fun *idx-pqueue-pop-fun* :: $'a \text{ idx-pqueue} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ idx-pqueue}$ **where**
idx-pqueue-pop-fun $(xs, m) = (\text{butlast } xs, \text{list-update } m (\text{fst } (\text{last } xs)) \text{None})$

lemma *idx-pqueue-pop-correct* [*forward-arg*]:
 $\text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m) \Longrightarrow xs \neq [] \Longrightarrow r = \text{idx-pqueue-pop-fun } (xs, m) \Longrightarrow$
 $\text{index-of-pqueue } r \wedge \text{fst } r = \text{butlast } xs \wedge \text{length } (\text{snd } r) = \text{length } m$
 <proof>

13.7 Bubble up and down

function *idx-bubble-down-fun* :: $'a::\text{linorder} \text{ idx-pqueue} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ idx-pqueue}$
where

idx-bubble-down-fun $(xs, m) k = ($
 if $s2 k < \text{length } xs$ then
 if $\text{snd } (xs ! s1 k) \leq \text{snd } (xs ! s2 k)$ then
 if $\text{snd } (xs ! k) > \text{snd } (xs ! s1 k)$ then
 idx-bubble-down-fun $(\text{idx-pqueue-swap-fun } (xs, m) k (s1 k)) (s1 k)$
 else (xs, m)
 else
 if $\text{snd } (xs ! k) > \text{snd } (xs ! s2 k)$ then
 idx-bubble-down-fun $(\text{idx-pqueue-swap-fun } (xs, m) k (s2 k)) (s2 k)$
 else (xs, m)
 else if $s1 k < \text{length } xs$ then
 if $\text{snd } (xs ! k) > \text{snd } (xs ! s1 k)$ then
 idx-bubble-down-fun $(\text{idx-pqueue-swap-fun } (xs, m) k (s1 k)) (s1 k)$
 else (xs, m)
 else (xs, m))

<proof>

termination <proof>

lemma *idx-bubble-down-fun-correct*:
 $r = \text{idx-bubble-down-fun } x k \Longrightarrow \text{is-heap-partial1 } (\text{fst } x) k \Longrightarrow$
 $\text{is-heap } (\text{fst } r) \wedge \text{mset } (\text{fst } r) = \text{mset } (\text{fst } x) \wedge \text{length } (\text{snd } r) = \text{length } (\text{snd } x)$
 <proof>
 <ML>

lemma *idx-bubble-down-fun-correct2* [forward]:
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } x \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (idx\text{-bubble}\text{-down}\text{-fun } x \ k)$
 ⟨proof⟩

fun *idx-bubble-up-fun* :: 'a::linorder *idx-pqueue* \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a *idx-pqueue* **where**
idx-bubble-up-fun (xs, m) k = (
 if k = 0 then (xs, m)
 else if k < length xs then
 if snd (xs ! k) < snd (xs ! par k) then
idx-bubble-up-fun (*idx-pqueue-swap-fun* (xs, m) k (par k)) (par k)
 else (xs, m)
 else (xs, m))

lemma *idx-bubble-up-fun-correct*:
 $r = idx\text{-bubble}\text{-up}\text{-fun } x \ k \implies is\text{-heap}\text{-partial2 } (fst \ x) \ k \implies$
 $is\text{-heap } (fst \ r) \wedge mset \ (fst \ r) = mset \ (fst \ x) \wedge length \ (snd \ r) = length \ (snd \ x)$
 ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *idx-bubble-up-fun-correct2* [forward]:
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } x \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (idx\text{-bubble}\text{-up}\text{-fun } x \ k)$
 ⟨proof⟩

13.8 Main operations

fun *delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun* :: 'a::linorder *idx-pqueue* \Rightarrow (nat \times 'a) \times 'a *idx-pqueue* **where**
delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun (xs, m) = (
 let (xs', m') = *idx-pqueue-swap-fun* (xs, m) 0 (length xs - 1);
 a'' = *idx-pqueue-pop-fun* (xs', m')
 in (last xs', *idx-bubble-down-fun* a'' 0))

lemma *delete-min-idx-pqueue-correct*:
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies xs \neq [] \implies res = delete\text{-min}\text{-idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-fun } (xs, m)$
 \implies
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (snd \ res)$
 ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *hd-last-swap-eval-last* [rewrite]:
 $xs \neq [] \implies last \ (list\text{-swap } xs \ 0 \ (length \ xs - 1)) = hd \ xs$
 ⟨proof⟩

Correctness of delete-min.

theorem *delete-min-idx-pqueue-correct2*:
 $is\text{-heap } xs \implies xs \neq [] \implies res = delete\text{-min}\text{-idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \implies in\text{-dex}\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$
 $is\text{-heap } (fst \ (snd \ res)) \wedge fst \ res = hd \ xs \wedge length \ (snd \ (snd \ res)) = length \ m \wedge$
 $map\text{-of}\text{-alist } (fst \ (snd \ res)) = delete\text{-map } (fst \ (fst \ res)) \ (map\text{-of}\text{-alist } xs)$

<proof>
<ML>

fun *insert-idx-pqueue-fun* :: *nat* \Rightarrow *'a::linorder* \Rightarrow *'a idx-pqueue* \Rightarrow *'a idx-pqueue*
where

insert-idx-pqueue-fun *k v x* = (
 let *x'* = *idx-pqueue-push-fun* *k v x* *in*
 idx-bubble-up-fun *x'* (*length* (*fst* *x'*) - 1))

lemma *insert-idx-pqueue-correct* [*forward-arg*]:

index-of-pqueue (*xs*, *m*) \Longrightarrow *k* < *length* *m* \Longrightarrow \neg *has-key-alist* *xs* *k* \Longrightarrow
index-of-pqueue (*insert-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*))

<proof>

Correctness of insertion.

theorem *insert-idx-pqueue-correct2*:

index-of-pqueue (*xs*, *m*) \Longrightarrow *is-heap* *xs* \Longrightarrow *k* < *length* *m* \Longrightarrow \neg *has-key-alist* *xs* *k*
 \Longrightarrow

r = *insert-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*) \Longrightarrow
is-heap (*fst* *r*) \wedge *length* (*snd* *r*) = *length* *m* \wedge
map-of-alist (*fst* *r*) = *map-of-alist* *xs* { *k* \rightarrow *v* }

<proof>

<ML>

fun *update-idx-pqueue-fun* :: *nat* \Rightarrow *'a::linorder* \Rightarrow *'a idx-pqueue* \Rightarrow *'a idx-pqueue*
where

update-idx-pqueue-fun *k v* (*xs*, *m*) = (
 if *m* ! *k* = *None* *then*
 insert-idx-pqueue-fun *k v* (*xs*, *m*)
 else let
 i = *the* (*m* ! *k*);
 xs' = *list-update* *xs* *i* (*k*, *v*)
 in
 if *snd* (*xs* ! *i*) \leq *v* *then* *idx-bubble-down-fun* (*xs'*, *m*) *i*
 else *idx-bubble-up-fun* (*xs'*, *m*) *i*)

lemma *update-idx-pqueue-correct* [*forward-arg*]:

index-of-pqueue (*xs*, *m*) \Longrightarrow *k* < *length* *m* \Longrightarrow
index-of-pqueue (*update-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*))

<proof>

Correctness of update.

theorem *update-idx-pqueue-correct2*:

index-of-pqueue (*xs*, *m*) \Longrightarrow *is-heap* *xs* \Longrightarrow *k* < *length* *m* \Longrightarrow
r = *update-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*) \Longrightarrow
is-heap (*fst* *r*) \wedge *length* (*snd* *r*) = *length* *m* \wedge
map-of-alist (*fst* *r*) = *map-of-alist* *xs* { *k* \rightarrow *v* }

<proof>

<ML>

end

14 Red-black trees

```
theory RBTree
  imports Lists-Ex
begin
```

Verification of functional red-black trees. For general technique, see Lists_Ex.thy.

14.1 Definition of RBT

```
datatype color = R | B
datatype ('a, 'b) rbt =
  Leaf
| Node (lsub: ('a, 'b) rbt) (cl: color) (key: 'a) (val: 'b) (rsub: ('a, 'b) rbt)
where
  cl Leaf = B
```

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *not-R* [forward]: $c \neq R \implies c = B$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *not-B* [forward]: $c \neq B \implies c = R$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *red-not-leaf* [forward]: $cl\ t = R \implies t \neq Leaf$ $\langle proof \rangle$

14.2 RBT invariants

```
fun black-depth :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  nat where
  black-depth Leaf = 0
| black-depth (Node l R k v r) = black-depth l
| black-depth (Node l B k v r) = black-depth l + 1
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

```
fun cl-inv :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  cl-inv Leaf = True
| cl-inv (Node l R k v r) = (cl-inv l  $\wedge$  cl-inv r  $\wedge$  cl l = B  $\wedge$  cl r = B)
| cl-inv (Node l B k v r) = (cl-inv l  $\wedge$  cl-inv r)
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

```
fun bd-inv :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  bd-inv Leaf = True
| bd-inv (Node l c k v r) = (bd-inv l  $\wedge$  bd-inv r  $\wedge$  black-depth l = black-depth r)
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

definition *is-rbt* :: ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow bool where [rewrite]:
is-rbt t = (cl-inv t \wedge bd-inv t)

lemma *cl-invI*: cl-inv l \implies cl-inv r \implies cl-inv (Node l B k v r) $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *bd-invI*: $bd\text{-inv } l \implies bd\text{-inv } r \implies black\text{-depth } l = black\text{-depth } r \implies bd\text{-inv}$
 $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r)$ $\langle proof \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *is-rbt-rec* [*forward*]: $is\text{-rbt } (Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r) \implies is\text{-rbt } l \wedge is\text{-rbt } r$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

14.3 Balancedness of RBT

lemma *two-distrib* [*rewrite*]: $(2::nat) * (a + 1) = 2 * a + 2$ $\langle proof \rangle$

fun *min-depth* :: $('a, 'b)$ *rbt* \Rightarrow *nat* **where**
 min-depth *Leaf* = 0
| *min-depth* $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r)$ = $min\ (min\text{-depth } l)\ (min\text{-depth } r) + 1$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

fun *max-depth* :: $('a, 'b)$ *rbt* \Rightarrow *nat* **where**
 max-depth *Leaf* = 0
| *max-depth* $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r)$ = $max\ (max\text{-depth } l)\ (max\text{-depth } r) + 1$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

Balancedness of red-black trees.

theorem *rbt-balanced*: $is\text{-rbt } t \implies max\text{-depth } t \leq 2 * min\text{-depth } t + 1$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

14.4 Definition and basic properties of *cl_inv'*

fun *cl-inv'* :: $('a, 'b)$ *rbt* \Rightarrow *bool* **where**
 cl-inv' *Leaf* = *True*
| *cl-inv'* $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r)$ = $(cl\text{-inv } l \wedge cl\text{-inv } r)$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *cl-inv'B* [*forward*, *backward1*]:
 $cl\text{-inv}'\ t \implies cl\ t = B \implies cl\text{-inv } t$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *cl-inv'R* [*forward*]:
 $cl\text{-inv}'\ (Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r) \implies cl\ l = B \implies cl\ r = B \implies cl\text{-inv } (Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *cl-inv-to-cl-inv'* [*forward*]: $cl\text{-inv } t \implies cl\text{-inv}'\ t$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *cl-inv'I* [*forward-arg*]:
 $cl\text{-inv } l \implies cl\text{-inv } r \implies cl\text{-inv}'\ (Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

14.5 Set of keys, sortedness

fun *rbt-in-traverse* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a list **where**
rbt-in-traverse Leaf = []
| *rbt-in-traverse* (Node l c k v r) = *rbt-in-traverse* l @ k # *rbt-in-traverse* r
⟨ML⟩

fun *rbt-set* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a set **where**
rbt-set Leaf = {}
| *rbt-set* (Node l c k v r) = {k} ∪ *rbt-set* l ∪ *rbt-set* r
⟨ML⟩

fun *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a × 'b) list **where**
rbt-in-traverse-pairs Leaf = []
| *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* (Node l c k v r) = *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* l @ (k, v) # *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* r
⟨ML⟩

lemma *rbt-in-traverse-fst* [rewrite]: *map fst (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t) = rbt-in-traverse t*
⟨proof⟩

definition *rbt-map* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) map **where**
rbt-map t = *map-of-alist (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t)*
⟨ML⟩

fun *rbt-sorted* :: ('a::linorder, 'b) rbt ⇒ bool **where**
rbt-sorted Leaf = True
| *rbt-sorted* (Node l c k v r) = ((∀ x∈*rbt-set* l. x < k) ∧ (∀ x∈*rbt-set* r. k < x) ∧ *rbt-sorted* l ∧ *rbt-sorted* r)
⟨ML⟩

lemma *rbt-sorted-lr* [forward]:
rbt-sorted (Node l c k v r) ⇒ *rbt-sorted* l ∧ *rbt-sorted* r ⟨proof⟩

lemma *rbt-inorder-preserve-set* [rewrite]:
rbt-set t = *set (rbt-in-traverse t)*
⟨proof⟩

lemma *rbt-inorder-sorted* [rewrite]:
rbt-sorted t ⇔ *strict-sorted (map fst (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t))*
⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

14.6 Balance function

definition *balanceR* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**
[rewrite]:
balanceR l k v r =

(if $cl\ r = R$ then
 let $lr = lsub\ r$; $rr = rsub\ r$ in
 if $cl\ lr = R$ then $Node\ (Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ (lsub\ lr))\ R\ (key\ lr)\ (val\ lr)\ (Node\ (rsub\ lr)\ B\ (key\ r)\ (val\ r)\ rr)$
 else if $cl\ rr = R$ then $Node\ (Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ lr)\ R\ (key\ r)\ (val\ r)\ (Node\ (lsub\ rr)\ B\ (key\ rr)\ (val\ rr)\ (rsub\ rr))$
 else $Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ r$
 else $Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ r$)

definition $balance :: ('a, 'b)\ rbt \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a, 'b)\ rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b)\ rbt$ **where** [rewrite]:

$balance\ l\ k\ v\ r =$
 (if $cl\ l = R$ then
 let $ll = lsub\ l$; $rl = rsub\ l$ in
 if $cl\ ll = R$ then $Node\ (Node\ (lsub\ ll)\ B\ (key\ ll)\ (val\ ll)\ (rsub\ ll))\ R\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (Node\ (rsub\ l)\ B\ k\ v\ r)$
 else if $cl\ rl = R$ then $Node\ (Node\ (lsub\ l)\ B\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (lsub\ rl))\ R\ (key\ rl)\ (val\ rl)\ (Node\ (rsub\ rl)\ B\ k\ v\ r)$
 else $balanceR\ l\ k\ v\ r$
 else $balanceR\ l\ k\ v\ r$)
 <ML>

lemma $balance\text{-}non\text{-}Leaf$ [resolve]: $balance\ l\ k\ v\ r \neq Leaf$ <proof>

lemma $balance\text{-}bdinv$ [forward-arg]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \Longrightarrow bd\text{-}inv\ r \Longrightarrow black\text{-}depth\ l = black\text{-}depth\ r \Longrightarrow bd\text{-}inv\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r)$
 <proof>

lemma $balance\text{-}bd$ [rewrite]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \Longrightarrow bd\text{-}inv\ r \Longrightarrow black\text{-}depth\ l = black\text{-}depth\ r \Longrightarrow$
 $black\text{-}depth\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l + 1$
 <proof>

lemma $balance\text{-}cl1$ [forward]:

$cl\text{-}inv'\ l \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv\ r \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r)$ <proof>

lemma $balance\text{-}cl2$ [forward]:

$cl\text{-}inv\ l \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv'\ r \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r)$ <proof>

lemma $balanceR\text{-}inorder\text{-}pairs$ [rewrite]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balanceR\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k, v)\ \#$
 $rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ r$ <proof>

lemma $balance\text{-}inorder\text{-}pairs$ [rewrite]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k, v)\ \# rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ r$
 <proof>

<ML>

14.7 ins function

fun *ins* :: 'a::order ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

ins *x v Leaf* = *Node Leaf R x v Leaf*

| *ins* *x v (Node l c y w r)* =

(if *c* = *B* then

(if *x* = *y* then *Node l B x v r*

else if *x* < *y* then *balance (ins x v l) y w r*

else *balance l y w (ins x v r)*)

else

(if *x* = *y* then *Node l R x v r*

else if *x* < *y* then *Node (ins x v l) R y w r*

else *Node l R y w (ins x v r)*)

⟨ML⟩

lemma *ins-non-Leaf* [resolve]: *ins x v t* ≠ *Leaf*

⟨proof⟩

lemma *cl-inv-ins* [forward]:

cl-inv t ⇒ *cl-inv' (ins x v t)*

⟨proof⟩

lemma *bd-inv-ins*:

bd-inv t ⇒ *bd-inv (ins x v t) ∧ black-depth t = black-depth (ins x v t)*

⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

lemma *ins-inorder-pairs* [rewrite]:

rbt-sorted t ⇒ *rbt-in-traverse-pairs (ins x v t) = ordered-insert-pairs x v (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t)*

⟨proof⟩

14.8 Paint function

fun *paint* :: color ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

paint c Leaf = *Leaf*

| *paint c (Node l c' x v r)* = *Node l c x v r*

⟨ML⟩

lemma *paint-cl-inv'* [forward]: *cl-inv' t* ⇒ *cl-inv' (paint c t)* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *paint-bd-inv* [forward]: *bd-inv t* ⇒ *bd-inv (paint c t)* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *paint-bd* [rewrite]:

bd-inv t ⇒ *t* ≠ *Leaf* ⇒ *cl t* = *B* ⇒ *black-depth (paint R t) = black-depth t - 1* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *paint-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:

rbt-in-traverse-pairs (paint c t) = rbt-in-traverse-pairs t ⟨proof⟩

14.9 Insert function

definition *rbt-insert* :: 'a::order \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt **where** [*rewrite*]:
rbt-insert x v t = *paint* B (*ins* x v t)

Correctness results for insertion.

theorem *insert-is-rbt* [*forward*]:
is-rbt t \Longrightarrow *is-rbt* (*rbt-insert* x v t) \langle *proof* \rangle

theorem *insert-sorted* [*forward*]:
rbt-sorted t \Longrightarrow *rbt-sorted* (*rbt-insert* x v t) \langle *proof* \rangle

theorem *insert-rbt-map* [*rewrite*]:
rbt-sorted t \Longrightarrow *rbt-map* (*rbt-insert* x v t) = (*rbt-map* t) {x \rightarrow v} \langle *proof* \rangle

14.10 Search on sorted trees and its correctness

fun *rbt-search* :: ('a::ord, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b **option** **where**
rbt-search Leaf x = None
| *rbt-search* (Node l c y w r) x =
 (if x = y then Some w
 else if x < y then *rbt-search* l x
 else *rbt-search* r x)
 \langle ML \rangle

Correctness of search

theorem *rbt-search-correct* [*rewrite*]:
rbt-sorted t \Longrightarrow *rbt-search* t x = (*rbt-map* t)(x)
 \langle *proof* \rangle

14.11 balL and balR

definition *balL* :: ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt **where** [*rewrite*]:

balL l k v r = (let lr = *lsub* r in
 if cl l = R then Node (Node (*lsub* l) B (key l) (val l) (*rsub* l)) R k v r
 else if r = Leaf then Node l R k v r
 else if cl r = B then *balance* l k v (Node (*lsub* r) R (key r) (val r) (*rsub* r))
 else if lr = Leaf then Node l R k v r
 else if cl lr = B then
 Node (Node l B k v (*lsub* lr)) R (key lr) (val lr) (*balance* (*rsub* lr) (key r) (val r) (*paint* R (*rsub* r)))
 else Node l R k v r)
 \langle ML \rangle

definition *balR* :: ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt **where** [*rewrite*]:

balR l k v r = (let rl = *rsub* l in
 if cl r = R then Node l R k v (Node (*lsub* r) B (key r) (val r) (*rsub* r))
 else if l = Leaf then Node l R k v r

else if $cl\ l = B$ then $balance\ (Node\ (lsub\ l)\ R\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (rsub\ l))\ k\ v\ r$
 else if $rl = Leaf$ then $Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r$
 else if $cl\ rl = B$ then
 $Node\ (balance\ (paint\ R\ (lsub\ l))\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (lsub\ rl))\ R\ (key\ rl)\ (val\ rl)$
 ($Node\ (rsub\ rl)\ B\ k\ v\ r$)
 else $Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r$)
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *balL-bd* [forward-arg]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \implies bd\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\ r = B \implies black\text{-}depth\ l + 1 = black\text{-}depth\ r \implies$
 $bd\text{-}inv\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) \wedge black\text{-}depth\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l + 1$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balL-bd'* [forward-arg]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \implies bd\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv\ r \implies black\text{-}depth\ l + 1 = black\text{-}depth\ r \implies$
 $bd\text{-}inv\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) \wedge black\text{-}depth\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l + 1$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balL-cl* [forward-arg]:

$cl\text{-}inv'\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\ r = B \implies cl\text{-}inv\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balL-cl'* [forward]:

$cl\text{-}inv'\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balR-bd* [forward-arg]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \implies bd\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv\ l \implies black\text{-}depth\ l = black\text{-}depth\ r + 1 \implies$
 $bd\text{-}inv\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r) \wedge black\text{-}depth\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balR-cl* [forward-arg]:

$cl\text{-}inv\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ r \implies cl\ l = B \implies cl\text{-}inv\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balR-cl'* [forward]:

$cl\text{-}inv\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balL-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k, v) \# rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs$
 r $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *balR-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k, v) \# rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs$
 r $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

14.12 Combine

fun *combine* :: ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

combine Leaf $t = t$

| *combine* t Leaf $= t$

| *combine* ($Node\ l1\ c1\ k1\ v1\ r1$) ($Node\ l2\ c2\ k2\ v2\ r2$) = (
 if $c1 = R$ then

```

    if c2 = R then
      let tm = combine r1 l2 in
        if cl tm = R then
          Node (Node l1 R k1 v1 (lsub tm)) R (key tm) (val tm) (Node (rsub tm)
R k2 v2 r2)
        else
          Node l1 R k1 v1 (Node tm R k2 v2 r2)
      else
        Node l1 R k1 v1 (combine r1 (Node l2 c2 k2 v2 r2))
  else
    if c2 = B then
      let tm = combine r1 l2 in
        if cl tm = R then
          Node (Node l1 B k1 v1 (lsub tm)) R (key tm) (val tm) (Node (rsub tm) B
k2 v2 r2)
        else
          balL l1 k1 v1 (Node tm B k2 v2 r2)
    else
      Node (combine (Node l1 c1 k1 v1 r1) l2) R k2 v2 r2)
⟨ML⟩

```

lemma *combine-bd* [forward-arg]:

```

  bd-inv lt  $\implies$  bd-inv rt  $\implies$  black-depth lt = black-depth rt  $\implies$ 
  bd-inv (combine lt rt)  $\wedge$  black-depth (combine lt rt) = black-depth lt
⟨proof⟩

```

lemma *combine-cl*:

```

  cl-inv lt  $\implies$  cl-inv rt  $\implies$ 
  (cl lt = B  $\longrightarrow$  cl rt = B  $\longrightarrow$  cl-inv (combine lt rt))  $\wedge$  cl-inv' (combine lt rt)
⟨proof⟩
⟨ML⟩

```

lemma *combine-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:

```

  rbt-in-traverse-pairs (combine lt rt) = rbt-in-traverse-pairs lt @ rbt-in-traverse-pairs
rt
⟨proof⟩

```

14.13 Deletion

fun *del* :: 'a::linorder \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

```

  del x Leaf = Leaf
| del x (Node l - k v r) =
  (if x = k then combine l r
   else if x < k then
     if l = Leaf then Node Leaf R k v r
     else if cl l = B then balL (del x l) k v r
     else Node (del x l) R k v r
   else
     if r = Leaf then Node l R k v Leaf

```

$$\text{else if } cl\ r = B \text{ then } balR\ l\ k\ v\ (del\ x\ r)$$

$$\text{else } Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ (del\ x\ r))$$
 <ML>

lemma *del-bd* [forward-arg]:

$$bd\text{-inv } t \implies cl\text{-inv } t \implies bd\text{-inv } (del\ x\ t) \wedge ($$

$$\text{if } cl\ t = R \text{ then } black\text{-depth } (del\ x\ t) = black\text{-depth } t$$

$$\text{else } black\text{-depth } (del\ x\ t) = black\text{-depth } t - 1)$$
 <proof>

lemma *del-cl*:

$$cl\text{-inv } t \implies \text{if } cl\ t = R \text{ then } cl\text{-inv } (del\ x\ t) \text{ else } cl\text{-inv}' (del\ x\ t)$$
 <proof>
 <ML>

lemma *del-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:

$$rbt\text{-sorted } t \implies rbt\text{-in-traverse-pairs } (del\ x\ t) = \text{remove-elt-pairs } x\ (rbt\text{-in-traverse-pairs } t)$$
 <proof>

definition *delete* :: 'a::linorder \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt **where** [rewrite]:

$$delete\ x\ t = \text{paint } B\ (del\ x\ t)$$

Correctness results for deletion.

theorem *delete-is-rbt* [forward]:

$$is\text{-rbt } t \implies is\text{-rbt } (delete\ x\ t)$$
 <proof>

theorem *delete-sorted* [forward]:

$$rbt\text{-sorted } t \implies rbt\text{-sorted } (delete\ x\ t)$$
 <proof>

theorem *delete-rbt-map* [rewrite]:

$$rbt\text{-sorted } t \implies rbt\text{-map } (delete\ x\ t) = \text{delete-map } x\ (rbt\text{-map } t)$$
 <proof>

<ML>

end

15 Rectangle intersection

theory *Rect-Intersect*
imports *Interval-Tree*
begin

Functional version of algorithm for detecting rectangle intersection. See [2, Exercise 14.3-7] for a reference.

15.1 Definition of rectangles

datatype 'a *rectangle* = *Rectangle* (*xint*: 'a *interval*) (*yint*: 'a *interval*)

⟨ML⟩

definition *is-rect* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:
is-rect rect ⟷ *is-interval* (xint rect) ∧ *is-interval* (yint rect)

definition *is-rect-list* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:
is-rect-list rects ⟷ (∀ i < length rects. *is-rect* (rects ! i))

lemma *is-rect-listD*: *is-rect-list* rects ⇒ i < length rects ⇒ *is-rect* (rects ! i)
⟨proof⟩
⟨ML⟩

definition *is-rect-overlap* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle ⇒ ('a::linorder) rectangle ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:
is-rect-overlap A B ⟷ (*is-overlap* (xint A) (xint B) ∧ *is-overlap* (yint A) (yint B))

definition *has-rect-overlap* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:
has-rect-overlap As ⟷ (∃ i < length As. ∃ j < length As. i ≠ j ∧ *is-rect-overlap* (As ! i) (As ! j))

15.2 INS / DEL operations

datatype 'a operation =
 INS (pos: 'a) (op-idx: nat) (op-int: 'a interval)
| DEL (pos: 'a) (op-idx: nat) (op-int: 'a interval)
⟨ML⟩

instantiation operation :: (linorder) linorder **begin**

definition *less*: (a < b) = (if pos a ≠ pos b then pos a < pos b else
 if *is-INS* a ≠ *is-INS* b then *is-INS* a ∧ ¬*is-INS* b
 else if op-idx a ≠ op-idx b then op-idx a < op-idx b else
 op-int a < op-int b)

definition *less-eq*: (a ≤ b) = (if pos a ≠ pos b then pos a < pos b else
 if *is-INS* a ≠ *is-INS* b then *is-INS* a ∧ ¬*is-INS* b
 else if op-idx a ≠ op-idx b then op-idx a < op-idx b else
 op-int a ≤ op-int b)

instance ⟨proof⟩ **end**

⟨ML⟩

lemma *operation-leD* [forward]:
(a::('a::linorder operation)) ≤ b ⇒ pos a ≤ pos b ⟨proof⟩

lemma *operation-lessI* [backward]:
p1 ≤ p2 ⇒ INS p1 n1 i1 < DEL p2 n2 i2
⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

15.3 Set of operations corresponding to a list of rectangles

fun *ins-op* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ nat ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation **where**
 ins-op *rects* *i* = *INS* (low (yint (rects ! i))) *i* (xint (rects ! i))
⟨ML⟩

fun *del-op* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ nat ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation **where**
 del-op *rects* *i* = *DEL* (high (yint (rects ! i))) *i* (xint (rects ! i))
⟨ML⟩

definition *ins-ops* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation list **where** [rewrite]:
 ins-ops *rects* = list (λ*i*. *ins-op* *rects* *i*) (length *rects*)

definition *del-ops* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation list **where** [rewrite]:
 del-ops *rects* = list (λ*i*. *del-op* *rects* *i*) (length *rects*)

lemma *ins-ops-distinct* [forward]: distinct (*ins-ops* *rects*)
⟨proof⟩

lemma *del-ops-distinct* [forward]: distinct (*del-ops* *rects*)
⟨proof⟩

lemma *set-ins-ops* [rewrite]:
 oper ∈ set (*ins-ops* *rects*) ⇔ op-idx oper < length *rects* ∧ oper = *ins-op* *rects*
 (op-idx oper)
⟨proof⟩

lemma *set-del-ops* [rewrite]:
 oper ∈ set (*del-ops* *rects*) ⇔ op-idx oper < length *rects* ∧ oper = *del-op* *rects*
 (op-idx oper)
⟨proof⟩

definition *all-ops* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation list **where** [rewrite]:
 all-ops *rects* = sort (*ins-ops* *rects* @ *del-ops* *rects*)

lemma *all-ops-distinct* [forward]: distinct (*all-ops* *rects*)
⟨proof⟩

lemma *set-all-ops-idx* [forward]:
 oper ∈ set (*all-ops* *rects*) ⇒ op-idx oper < length *rects* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *set-all-ops-ins* [forward]:
 INS *p* *n* *i* ∈ set (*all-ops* *rects*) ⇒ *INS* *p* *n* *i* = *ins-op* *rects* *n* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *set-all-ops-del* [forward]:
 DEL *p* *n* *i* ∈ set (*all-ops* *rects*) ⇒ *DEL* *p* *n* *i* = *del-op* *rects* *n* ⟨proof⟩

lemma *ins-in-set-all-ops*:

$i < \text{length } \text{rects} \implies \text{ins-op } \text{rects } i \in \text{set } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects})$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *del-in-set-all-ops*:

$i < \text{length } \text{rects} \implies \text{del-op } \text{rects } i \in \text{set } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects})$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *all-ops-sorted [forward]*: *sorted* (*all-ops* *rects*) $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *all-ops-nonempty [backward]*: *rects* $\neq [] \implies \text{all-ops } \text{rects} \neq []$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

15.4 Applying a set of operations

definition *apply-ops-k* :: ('a::linorder) *rectangle list* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat set* **where**
 $\langle \text{rewrite} \rangle$:

$\text{apply-ops-k } \text{rects } k = (\text{let } \text{ops} = \text{all-ops } \text{rects } \text{in}$
 $\{i. i < \text{length } \text{rects} \wedge (\exists j < k. \text{ins-op } \text{rects } i = \text{ops } ! j) \wedge \neg(\exists j < k. \text{del-op } \text{rects}$
 $i = \text{ops } ! j)\})$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *apply-ops-set-mem [rewrite]*:

$\text{ops} = \text{all-ops } \text{rects} \implies$
 $i \in \text{apply-ops-k } \text{rects } k \iff (i < \text{length } \text{rects} \wedge (\exists j < k. \text{ins-op } \text{rects } i = \text{ops } ! j)$
 $\wedge \neg(\exists j < k. \text{del-op } \text{rects } i = \text{ops } ! j))$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

definition *xints-of* :: 'a *rectangle list* \Rightarrow *nat set* \Rightarrow (('a::linorder) *idx-interval*) *set*
where $\langle \text{rewrite} \rangle$:

$\text{xints-of } \text{rect } \text{is} = (\lambda i. \text{IdxInterval } (\text{xint } (\text{rect } ! i)) i) ' \text{is}$

lemma *xints-of-mem [rewrite]*:

$\text{IdxInterval } \text{it } i \in \text{xints-of } \text{rect } \text{is} \iff (i \in \text{is} \wedge \text{xint } (\text{rect } ! i) = \text{it})$ $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *xints-diff [rewrite]*:

$\text{xints-of } \text{rects } (A - B) = \text{xints-of } \text{rects } A - \text{xints-of } \text{rects } B$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition *has-overlap-at-k* :: ('a::linorder) *rectangle list* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *bool* **where**
 $\langle \text{rewrite} \rangle$:

$\text{has-overlap-at-k } \text{rects } k \iff ($
 $\text{let } S = \text{apply-ops-k } \text{rects } k; \text{ops} = \text{all-ops } \text{rects } \text{in}$
 $\text{is-INS } (\text{ops } ! k) \wedge \text{has-overlap } (\text{xints-of } \text{rects } S) (\text{op-int } (\text{ops } ! k)))$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *has-overlap-at-k-equiv* [forward]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies k < length\ ops \implies$
 $has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k \implies has-rect-overlap\ rects$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *has-overlap-at-k-equiv2* [resolve]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies has-rect-overlap\ rects \implies$
 $\exists k < length\ ops.\ has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k$
 ⟨proof⟩

definition *has-overlap-lst* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list \Rightarrow bool **where** [rewrite]:
 $has-overlap-lst\ rects = (let\ ops = all-ops\ rects\ in\ (\exists k < length\ ops.\ has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k))$

lemma *has-overlap-equiv* [rewrite]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies has-overlap-lst\ rects \longleftrightarrow has-rect-overlap\ rects$ ⟨proof⟩

15.5 Implementation of apply_ops_k

lemma *apply-ops-k-next1* [rewrite]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies is-INS\ (ops\ !\ n)$
 \implies
 $apply-ops-k\ rects\ (n + 1) = apply-ops-k\ rects\ n \cup \{op-idx\ (ops\ !\ n)\}$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *apply-ops-k-next2* [rewrite]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies \neg is-INS\ (ops\ !\ n)$
 \implies
 $apply-ops-k\ rects\ (n + 1) = apply-ops-k\ rects\ n - \{op-idx\ (ops\ !\ n)\}$ ⟨proof⟩

definition *apply-ops-k-next* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list \Rightarrow 'a idx-interval set \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a idx-interval set **where**
 $apply-ops-k-next\ rects\ S\ k = (let\ ops = all-ops\ rects\ in$
 (case ops ! k of
 $INS\ p\ n\ i \Rightarrow S \cup \{IdxInterval\ i\ n\}$
 $| DEL\ p\ n\ i \Rightarrow S - \{IdxInterval\ i\ n\}))$
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *apply-ops-k-next-is-correct* [rewrite]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies$
 $S = xints-of\ rects\ (apply-ops-k\ rects\ n) \implies$
 $xints-of\ rects\ (apply-ops-k\ rects\ (n + 1)) = apply-ops-k-next\ rects\ S\ n$
 ⟨proof⟩

function *rect-inter* :: nat rectangle list \Rightarrow nat idx-interval set \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow bool **where**
 $rect-inter\ rects\ S\ k = (let\ ops = all-ops\ rects\ in$
 if $k \geq length\ ops$ then False
 else if $is-INS\ (ops\ !\ k)$ then

```

    if has-overlap S (op-int (ops ! k)) then True
    else if k = length ops - 1 then False
    else rect-inter rects (apply-ops-k-next rects S k) (k + 1)
    else if k = length ops - 1 then False
    else rect-inter rects (apply-ops-k-next rects S k) (k + 1)
  <proof>
termination <proof>

```

lemma *rect-inter-correct-ind* [rewrite]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies$
 $rect-inter\ rects\ (xints-of\ rects\ (apply-ops-k\ rects\ n))\ n \iff$
 $(\exists k < length\ ops.\ k \geq n \wedge has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k)$
 <proof>

Correctness of functional algorithm.

theorem *rect-inter-correct* [rewrite]:
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies rect-inter\ rects\ \{\}\ 0 \iff has-rect-overlap\ rects$
 <proof>

end

theory *SepLogic-Base*
imports *Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main*
begin

General auto2 setup for separation logic. The automation defined here can be instantiated for different variants of separation logic.

<ML>

end

16 Separation logic

theory *SepAuto*
imports *SepLogic-Base HOL-Imperative-HOL.Imperative-HOL*
begin

Separation logic for Imperative_HOL, and setup of auto2. The development of separation logic here follows [5] by Lammich and Meis.

16.1 Partial Heaps

datatype *pheap* = *pHeap* (*heapOf*: *heap*) (*addrOf*: *addr set*)
 <ML>

fun *in-range* :: (*heap* × *addr set*) ⇒ *bool* **where**
 $in-range\ (h, as) \iff (\forall a \in as.\ a < lim\ h)$

$\langle ML \rangle$

Two heaps agree on a set of addresses.

definition $relH :: addr\ set \Rightarrow heap \Rightarrow heap \Rightarrow bool$ **where** [rewrite]:
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' = (in-range\ (h,\ as) \wedge in-range\ (h',\ as) \wedge$
 $(\forall t.\ \forall a \in as.\ refs\ h\ t\ a = refs\ h'\ t\ a \wedge arrays\ h\ t\ a = arrays\ h'\ t\ a))$

lemma $relH-D$ [forward]:
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow in-range\ (h,\ as) \wedge in-range\ (h',\ as)$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma $relH-D2$ [rewrite]:
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow a \in as \Longrightarrow refs\ h\ t\ a = refs\ h'\ t\ a$
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow a \in as \Longrightarrow arrays\ h\ t\ a = arrays\ h'\ t\ a$ $\langle proof \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma $relH-dist-union$ [forward]:
 $relH\ (as \cup as')\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow relH\ as\ h\ h' \wedge relH\ as'\ h\ h'$ $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma $relH-ref$ [rewrite]:
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow addr-of-ref\ r \in as \Longrightarrow Ref.get\ h\ r = Ref.get\ h'\ r$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma $relH-array$ [rewrite]:
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow addr-of-array\ r \in as \Longrightarrow Array.get\ h\ r = Array.get\ h'\ r$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma $relH-set-ref$ [resolve]:
 $relH\ \{a.\ a < lim\ h \wedge a \notin \{addr-of-ref\ r\}\}\ h\ (Ref.set\ r\ x\ h)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma $relH-set-array$ [resolve]:
 $relH\ \{a.\ a < lim\ h \wedge a \notin \{addr-of-array\ r\}\}\ h\ (Array.set\ r\ x\ h)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

16.2 Assertions

datatype $assn\ raw = Assn\ (assn-fn: pheap \Rightarrow bool)$

fun $aseval :: assn\ raw \Rightarrow pheap \Rightarrow bool$ **where**
 $aseval\ (Assn\ f)\ h = f\ h$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

definition $proper :: assn\ raw \Rightarrow bool$ **where** [rewrite]:
 $proper\ P =$
 $(\forall h\ as.\ aseval\ P\ (pHeap\ h\ as) \longrightarrow in-range\ (h,\ as)) \wedge$
 $(\forall h\ h'\ as.\ aseval\ P\ (pHeap\ h\ as) \longrightarrow relH\ as\ h\ h' \longrightarrow in-range\ (h',\ as) \longrightarrow$
 $aseval\ P\ (pHeap\ h'\ as))$

fun $in-range-assn :: pheap \Rightarrow bool$ **where**

in-range-assn (*pHeap* *h as*) $\longleftrightarrow (\forall a \in as. a < \text{lim } h)$
 ⟨ML⟩

typedef *assn* = *Collect proper*
 ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

lemma *Abs-assn-inverse'* [*rewrite*]: *proper y* $\implies \text{Rep-assn } (\text{Abs-assn } y) = y$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *proper-Rep-assn* [*forward*]: *proper (Rep-assn P)* ⟨proof⟩

definition *models* :: *pheap* \Rightarrow *assn* \Rightarrow *bool* (**infix** $\langle \models \rangle$ 50) **where** [*rewrite-bidir*]:
h $\models P \longleftrightarrow \text{aseval } (\text{Rep-assn } P) h$

lemma *models-in-range* [*resolve*]: *pHeap h as* $\models P \implies \text{in-range } (h, as)$ ⟨proof⟩

lemma *mod-relH* [*forward*]: *relH as h h'* $\implies \text{pHeap } h as \models P \implies \text{pHeap } h' as \models P$ ⟨proof⟩

instantiation *assn* :: *one* **begin**

definition *one-assn* :: *assn* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$1 \equiv \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } (\lambda h. \text{addrOf } h = \{\}))$

instance ⟨proof⟩ **end**

abbreviation *one-assn* :: *assn* ($\langle \text{emp} \rangle$) **where** *one-assn* $\equiv 1$

lemma *one-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]: *h* $\models \text{emp} \longleftrightarrow \text{addrOf } h = \{\}$ ⟨proof⟩
 ⟨ML⟩

instantiation *assn* :: *times* **begin**

definition *times-assn* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$P * Q = \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } ($

$\lambda h. (\exists as1 as2. \text{addrOf } h = as1 \cup as2 \wedge as1 \cap as2 = \{\} \wedge$

$\text{aseval } (\text{Rep-assn } P) (\text{pHeap } (\text{heapOf } h) as1) \wedge \text{aseval } (\text{Rep-assn}$

$Q) (\text{pHeap } (\text{heapOf } h) as2))))$

instance ⟨proof⟩ **end**

lemma *mod-star-conv* [*rewrite*]:

$\text{pHeap } h as \models A * B \longleftrightarrow (\exists as1 as2. as = as1 \cup as2 \wedge as1 \cap as2 = \{\} \wedge \text{pHeap } h as1 \models A \wedge \text{pHeap } h as2 \models B)$ ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

lemma *aseval-ext* [*backward*]: $\forall h. \text{aseval } P h = \text{aseval } P' h \implies P = P'$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *assn-ext*: $\forall h as. \text{pHeap } h as \models P \longleftrightarrow \text{pHeap } h as \models Q \implies P = Q$
 ⟨proof⟩

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *assn-one-left*: $1 * P = (P::assn)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *assn-times-comm*: $P * Q = Q * (P::assn)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *assn-times-assoc*: $(P * Q) * R = P * (Q * (R::assn))$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

instantiation *assn* :: *comm-monoid-mult* **begin**
 instance $\langle proof \rangle$
end

16.2.1 Existential Quantification

definition *ex-assn* :: $'a \Rightarrow assn \Rightarrow assn$ (**binder** $\langle \exists_A \rangle$ 11) **where** [*rewrite*]:
 $(\exists_A x. P x) = Abs-assn (Assn (\lambda h. \exists x. h \models P x))$

lemma *mod-ex-dist* [*rewrite*]: $(h \models (\exists_A x. P x)) \longleftrightarrow (\exists x. h \models P x)$ $\langle proof \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *ex-distrib-star*: $(\exists_A x. P x * Q) = (\exists_A x. P x) * Q$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

16.2.2 Pointers

definition *sng-assn* :: $'a::heap\ ref \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow assn$ (**infix** $\langle \mapsto_r \rangle$ 82) **where** [*rewrite*]:
 $r \mapsto_r x = Abs-assn (Assn (\lambda h. Ref.get (heapOf h) r = x \wedge addrOf h = \{addr-of-ref r\} \wedge addr-of-ref r < lim (heapOf h)))$

lemma *sng-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]:
 $pHeap h as \models r \mapsto_r x \longleftrightarrow (Ref.get h r = x \wedge as = \{addr-of-ref r\} \wedge addr-of-ref r < lim h)$ $\langle proof \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

definition *snga-assn* :: $'a::heap\ array \Rightarrow 'a\ list \Rightarrow assn$ (**infix** $\langle \mapsto_a \rangle$ 82) **where** [*rewrite*]:
 $r \mapsto_a x = Abs-assn (Assn (\lambda h. Array.get (heapOf h) r = x \wedge addrOf h = \{addr-of-array r\} \wedge addr-of-array r < lim (heapOf h)))$

lemma *snga-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]:
 $pHeap h as \models r \mapsto_a x \longleftrightarrow (Array.get h r = x \wedge as = \{addr-of-array r\} \wedge addr-of-array r < lim h)$ $\langle proof \rangle$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

16.2.3 Pure Assertions

definition *pure-assn* :: *bool* \Rightarrow *assn* ($\langle \uparrow \rangle$) **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$\uparrow b = \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } (\lambda h. \text{addrOf } h = \{\} \wedge b))$$

lemma *pure-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]: $h \models \uparrow b \iff (\text{addrOf } h = \{\} \wedge b)$ \langle *proof* \rangle
 \langle *ML* \rangle

definition *top-assn* :: *assn* ($\langle \text{true} \rangle$) **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$\text{top-assn} = \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } \text{in-range-assn})$$

lemma *top-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]: $p\text{Heap } h \text{ as} \models \text{true} \iff \text{in-range } (h, \text{as})$ \langle *proof* \rangle
 \langle *ML* \rangle

16.2.4 Properties of assertions

abbreviation *bot-assn* :: *assn* ($\langle \text{false} \rangle$) **where** $\text{bot-assn} \equiv \uparrow \text{False}$

lemma *top-assn-reduce*: $\text{true} * \text{true} = \text{true}$
 \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *mod-pure-star-dist* [*rewrite*]:

$$h \models P * \uparrow b \iff (h \models P \wedge b)$$

\langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *pure-conj*: $\uparrow(P \wedge Q) = \uparrow P * \uparrow Q$ \langle *proof* \rangle

16.2.5 Entailment and its properties

definition *entails* :: *assn* \Rightarrow *assn* \Rightarrow *bool* (**infix** $\langle \Longrightarrow_A \rangle$ 10) **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$(P \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\forall h. h \models P \longrightarrow h \models Q)$$

lemma *entails-triv*: $A \Longrightarrow_A A$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-true*: $A \Longrightarrow_A \text{true}$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-frame* [*backward*]: $P \Longrightarrow_A Q \Longrightarrow P * R \Longrightarrow_A Q * R$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-frame'*: $\neg (A * F \Longrightarrow_A Q) \Longrightarrow A \Longrightarrow_A B \Longrightarrow \neg (B * F \Longrightarrow_A Q)$
 \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-frame''*: $\neg (P \Longrightarrow_A B * F) \Longrightarrow A \Longrightarrow_A B \Longrightarrow \neg (P \Longrightarrow_A A * F)$
 \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-equiv-forward*: $P = Q \Longrightarrow P \Longrightarrow_A Q$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-equiv-backward*: $P = Q \Longrightarrow Q \Longrightarrow_A P$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entailsD* [*forward*]: $P \Longrightarrow_A Q \Longrightarrow h \models P \Longrightarrow h \models Q$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-trans2*: $A \Longrightarrow_A D * B \Longrightarrow B \Longrightarrow_A C \Longrightarrow A \Longrightarrow_A D * C$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-pure'*: $\neg(\uparrow b \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\neg(\text{emp} \Longrightarrow_A Q) \wedge b)$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-pure*: $\neg(P * \uparrow b \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\neg(P \Longrightarrow_A Q) \wedge b)$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-ex*: $\neg((\exists_A x. P x) \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\exists x. \neg(P x \Longrightarrow_A Q))$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-ex-post*: $\neg(P \Longrightarrow_A (\exists_A x. Q x)) \Longrightarrow \forall x. \neg(P \Longrightarrow_A Q x)$ \langle *proof* \rangle

lemma *entails-pure-post*: $\neg(P \Longrightarrow_A Q * \uparrow b) \Longrightarrow P \Longrightarrow_A Q \Longrightarrow \neg b$ \langle *proof* \rangle

$\langle ML \rangle$

16.3 Definition of the run predicate

inductive $run :: 'a \text{ Heap} \Rightarrow \text{heap option} \Rightarrow \text{heap option} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{bool}$ **where**

$run\ c\ None\ None\ r$
| $execute\ c\ h = None \Longrightarrow run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ None\ r$
| $execute\ c\ h = Some\ (r, h') \Longrightarrow run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ (Some\ h')\ r$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma $run\text{-complete}$ $[resolve]$:

$\exists \sigma' r. run\ c\ \sigma\ \sigma' (r::'a)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma $run\text{-to-execute}$ $[forward]$:

$run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma' r \Longrightarrow$ if $\sigma' = None$ then $execute\ c\ h = None$ else $execute\ c\ h = Some\ (r, \text{the } \sigma')$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma $runE$ $[forward]$:

$run\ f\ (Some\ h)\ (Some\ h')\ r' \Longrightarrow run\ (f \ggg g)\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma\ r \Longrightarrow run\ (g\ r')$
 $(Some\ h')\ \sigma\ r$ $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

16.4 Definition of hoare triple, and the frame rule.

definition $new\text{-addrs} :: \text{heap} \Rightarrow \text{addr set} \Rightarrow \text{heap} \Rightarrow \text{addr set}$ **where** $[rewrite]$:

$new\text{-addrs}\ h\ as\ h' = as \cup \{a. \text{lim } h \leq a \wedge a < \text{lim } h'\}$

definition $hoare\text{-triple} :: \text{assn} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ Heap} \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow \text{assn}) \Rightarrow \text{bool}$ $(\langle \langle - \rangle / - / \langle - \rangle \rangle)$

where $[rewrite]$:

$\langle P \rangle\ c < Q \rangle \iff (\forall h\ as\ \sigma\ r. pHeap\ h\ as \models P \longrightarrow run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma\ r \longrightarrow$
 $(\sigma \neq None \wedge pHeap\ (\text{the } \sigma)\ (new\text{-addrs}\ h\ as\ (\text{the } \sigma)) \models Q\ r \wedge relH\ \{a . a <$
 $\text{lim } h \wedge a \notin as\} h\ (\text{the } \sigma) \wedge$
 $\text{lim } h \leq \text{lim } (\text{the } \sigma)))$

lemma $hoare\text{-triple}D$ $[forward]$:

$\langle P \rangle\ c < Q \rangle \Longrightarrow run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma\ r \Longrightarrow \forall as. pHeap\ h\ as \models P \longrightarrow$
 $(\sigma \neq None \wedge pHeap\ (\text{the } \sigma)\ (new\text{-addrs}\ h\ as\ (\text{the } \sigma)) \models Q\ r \wedge relH\ \{a . a <$
 $\text{lim } h \wedge a \notin as\} h\ (\text{the } \sigma) \wedge$
 $\text{lim } h \leq \text{lim } (\text{the } \sigma))$

$\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

abbreviation $hoare\text{-triple}' :: \text{assn} \Rightarrow 'r \text{ Heap} \Rightarrow ('r \Rightarrow \text{assn}) \Rightarrow \text{bool}$ $(\langle \langle - \rangle - \langle - \rangle_t \rangle)$ **where**

$\langle P \rangle\ c < Q \rangle_t \equiv \langle P \rangle\ c < \lambda r. Q\ r * true \rangle$

theorem *frame-rule* [*backward*]:

$$\langle P \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \implies \langle P * R \rangle c \langle \lambda x. Q x * R \rangle$$

<proof>

This is the last use of the definition of separating conjunction.

<ML>

theorem *bind-rule*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \forall x. \langle Q x \rangle g x \langle R \rangle \implies \langle P \rangle f \ggg g \langle R \rangle$$

<proof>

Actual statement used:

lemma *bind-rule'*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \neg \langle P \rangle f \ggg g \langle R \rangle \implies \exists x. \neg \langle Q x \rangle g x \langle R \rangle \quad \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *pre-rule'*:

$$\neg \langle P * R \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies P \implies_A P' \implies \neg \langle P' * R \rangle f \langle Q \rangle$$

<proof>

lemma *pre-rule''*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies P' \implies_A P * R \implies \langle P' \rangle f \langle \lambda x. Q x * R \rangle$$

<proof>

lemma *pre-ex-rule*:

$$\neg \langle \exists_{Ax}. P x \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow (\exists x. \neg \langle P x \rangle f \langle Q \rangle) \quad \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *pre-pure-rule*:

$$\neg \langle P * \uparrow b \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow \neg \langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \wedge b \quad \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *pre-pure-rule'*:

$$\neg \langle \uparrow b \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow \neg \langle \text{emp} \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \wedge b \quad \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *post-rule*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \forall x. Q x \implies_A R x \implies \langle P \rangle f \langle R \rangle \quad \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

<ML>

Actual statement used:

lemma *post-rule'*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \neg \langle P \rangle f \langle R \rangle \implies \exists x. \neg (Q x \implies_A R x) \quad \langle \text{proof} \rangle$$

lemma *norm-pre-pure-iff*: $\langle P * \uparrow b \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow (b \longrightarrow \langle P \rangle c \langle Q \rangle)$ *<proof>*

lemma *norm-pre-pure-iff2*: $\langle \uparrow b \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow (b \longrightarrow \langle \text{emp} \rangle c \langle Q \rangle)$ *<proof>*

16.5 Hoare triples for atomic commands

First, those that do not modify the heap.

<ML>

lemma *assert-rule*:

$\langle \uparrow(R\ x) \rangle \text{ assert } R\ x \langle \lambda r. \uparrow(r = x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *execute-return'* [*rewrite*]: $\text{execute } (\text{return } x)\ h = \text{Some } (x, h) \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *return-rule*:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{ return } x \langle \lambda r. \uparrow(r = x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *nth-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(i < \text{length } xs) \rangle \text{ Array.nth } a\ i \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(r = xs\ !\ i) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *length-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle \text{ Array.len } a \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(r = \text{length } xs) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *lookup-rule*:

$\langle p \mapsto_r x \rangle !p \langle \lambda r. p \mapsto_r x * \uparrow(r = x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *freeze-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle \text{ Array.freeze } a \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(r = xs) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Next, the update rules.

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *Array-lim-set* [*rewrite*]: $\text{lim } (\text{Array.set } p\ xs\ h) = \text{lim } h \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *upd-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(i < \text{length } xs) \rangle \text{ Array.upd } i\ x\ a \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a \text{list-update } xs\ i\ x * \uparrow(r = a) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *update-rule*:

$\langle p \mapsto_r y \rangle p := x \langle \lambda r. p \mapsto_r x \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Finally, the allocation rules.

lemma *lim-set-gen* [*rewrite*]: $\text{lim } (h(\text{lim} := l)) = l \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *Array-alloc-def'* [*rewrite*]:

$\text{Array.alloc } xs\ h = (\text{let } l = \text{lim } h; r = \text{Array } l \text{ in } (r, (\text{Array.set } r\ xs\ (h(\text{lim} := l + 1)))))) \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *refs-on-Array-set* [*rewrite*]: $\text{refs } (\text{Array.set } p\ xs\ h)\ t\ i = \text{refs } h\ t\ i \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *arrays-on-Ref-set* [rewrite]: $arrays (Ref.set\ p\ x\ h)\ t\ i = arrays\ h\ t\ i$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *refs-on-Array-alloc* [rewrite]: $refs (snd (Array.alloc\ xs\ h))\ t\ i = refs\ h\ t\ i$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *arrays-on-Ref-alloc* [rewrite]: $arrays (snd (Ref.alloc\ x\ h))\ t\ i = arrays\ h\ t\ i$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *arrays-on-Array-alloc* [rewrite]: $i < lim\ h \implies arrays (snd (Array.alloc\ xs\ h))\ t\ i = arrays\ h\ t\ i$
 ⟨proof⟩

lemma *refs-on-Ref-alloc* [rewrite]: $i < lim\ h \implies refs (snd (Ref.alloc\ x\ h))\ t\ i = refs\ h\ t\ i$
 ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

lemma *new-rule*:

⟨emp⟩ $Array.new\ n\ x <\lambda r. r \mapsto_a\ replicate\ n\ x>$ ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

lemma *of-list-rule*:

⟨emp⟩ $Array.of-list\ xs <\lambda r. r \mapsto_a\ xs>$ ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

lemma *ref-rule*:

⟨emp⟩ $ref\ x <\lambda r. r \mapsto_r\ x>$ ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

16.6 Definition of procedures

ASCII abbreviations for ML files.

abbreviation (*input*) *ex-assn-ascii* :: $(!a \Rightarrow assn) \Rightarrow assn$ (**binder** ⟨EXA⟩ 11)

where $ex-assn-ascii \equiv ex-assn$

abbreviation (*input*) *models-ascii* :: $pheap \Rightarrow assn \Rightarrow bool$ (**infix** ⟨|=⟩ 50)

where $h\ |=\ P \equiv h\ \models\ P$

⟨ML⟩

Some simple tests

theorem ⟨emp⟩ $ref\ x <\lambda r. r \mapsto_r\ x>$ ⟨proof⟩

theorem $<a \mapsto_r\ x> ref\ x <\lambda r. a \mapsto_r\ x * r \mapsto_r\ x>$ ⟨proof⟩

theorem $<a \mapsto_r\ x> (!a) <\lambda r. a \mapsto_r\ x * \uparrow(r = x)>$ ⟨proof⟩

theorem $<a \mapsto_r\ x * b \mapsto_r\ y> (!a) <\lambda r. a \mapsto_r\ x * b \mapsto_r\ y * \uparrow(r = x)>$ ⟨proof⟩

```

theorem <a ↦r x * b ↦r y> (!b) <λr. a ↦r x * b ↦r y * ↑(r = y)> <proof>
theorem <a ↦r x> do { a := y; !a } <λr. a ↦r y * ↑(r = y)> <proof>
theorem <a ↦r x> do { a := y; a := z; !a } <λr. a ↦r z * ↑(r = z)> <proof>
theorem <a ↦r x> do { y ← !a; ref y } <λr. a ↦r x * r ↦r x> <proof>
theorem <emp> return x <λr. ↑(r = x)> <proof>

```

end

```

theory GCD-Impl
  imports SepAuto
begin

```

A tutorial example for computation of GCD.

Turn on auto2's trace

```
declare [[print-trace]]
```

Property of gcd that justifies the recursive computation. Add as a right-to-left rewrite rule.

<ML>

Functional version of gcd.

```

fun gcd-fun :: nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat where
  gcd-fun a b = (if b = 0 then a else gcd-fun b (a mod b))

```

The fun package automatically generates induction rule upon showing termination. This adds the induction rule for the @fun_induct command.

<ML>

```

lemma gcd-fun-correct:
  gcd-fun a b = gcd a b
<proof>

```

Imperative version of gcd.

```

partial-function (heap) gcd-impl :: nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat Heap where
  gcd-impl a b = (
    if b = 0 then return a
    else do {
      c ← return (a mod b);
      r ← gcd-impl b c;
      return r
    })

```

The program is sufficiently simple that we can prove the Hoare triple directly (without going through the functional program).

```

theorem gcd-impl-correct:
  <emp> gcd-impl a b <λr. ↑(r = gcd a b)>

```

<proof>

Turn off trace.

declare $[[print-trace = false]]$

end

17 Implementation of linked list

theory *LinkedList*
imports *SepAuto*
begin

Examples in linked lists. Definitions and some of the examples are based on *List_Seg* and *Open_List* theories in [5] by Lammich and Meis.

17.1 List Assertion

datatype *'a node* = *Node* (*val: 'a*) (*next: 'a node ref option*)
<ML>

fun *node-encode* :: *'a::heap node* \Rightarrow *nat* **where**
node-encode (*Node x r*) = *to-nat* (*x, r*)

instance *node* :: (*heap*) *heap*
<proof>

fun *os-list* :: *'a::heap list* \Rightarrow *'a node ref option* \Rightarrow *assn* **where**
os-list [] *p* = $\uparrow(p = \text{None})$
| *os-list* (*x # l*) (*Some p*) = $(\exists_A q. p \mapsto_r \text{Node } x \ q * \text{os-list } l \ q)$
| *os-list* (*x # l*) *None* = *false*
<ML>

lemma *os-list-empty* [*forward-ent*]:
os-list [] *p* $\Longrightarrow_A \uparrow(p = \text{None})$ *<proof>*

lemma *os-list-Cons* [*forward-ent*]:
os-list (*x # l*) *p* $\Longrightarrow_A (\exists_A q. \text{the } p \mapsto_r \text{Node } x \ q * \text{os-list } l \ q * \uparrow(p \neq \text{None}))$
<proof>

lemma *os-list-none*: *emp* $\Longrightarrow_A \text{os-list [] None}$ *<proof>*

lemma *os-list-constr-ent*:
p $\mapsto_r \text{Node } x \ q * \text{os-list } l \ q \Longrightarrow_A \text{os-list } (x \ # \ l) \ (\text{Some } p)$ *<proof>*

<ML>

type-synonym *'a os-list* = *'a node ref option*

17.2 Basic operations

definition *os-empty* :: 'a::heap os-list Heap **where**
os-empty = return None

lemma *os-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle emp \rangle os_empty \langle os_list [] \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

definition *os-is-empty* :: 'a::heap os-list \Rightarrow bool Heap **where**
os-is-empty b = return (b = None)

lemma *os-is-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle os_list\ xs\ b \rangle os_is_empty\ b \langle \lambda r. os_list\ xs\ b * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow xs = []) \rangle$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *os-prepend* :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a::heap os-list \Rightarrow 'a os-list Heap **where**
os-prepend a n = do { p \leftarrow ref (Node a n); return (Some p) }

lemma *os-prepend-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle os_list\ xs\ n \rangle os_prepend\ x\ n \langle os_list\ (x \# xs) \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

definition *os-pop* :: 'a::heap os-list \Rightarrow ('a \times 'a os-list) Heap **where**
os-pop r = (case r of
 None \Rightarrow raise STR "Empty Os-list" |
 Some p \Rightarrow do { m \leftarrow !p; return (val m, next m)})

lemma *os-pop-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle os_list\ xs\ (Some\ p) \rangle$
 $os_pop\ (Some\ p)$
 $\langle \lambda(x,r'). os_list\ (tl\ xs)\ r' * p \mapsto_r (Node\ x\ r') * \uparrow(x = hd\ xs) \rangle$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

17.3 Reverse

partial-function (*heap*) *os-reverse-aux* :: 'a::heap os-list \Rightarrow 'a os-list \Rightarrow 'a os-list Heap **where**

os-reverse-aux q p = (case p of
 None \Rightarrow return q |
 Some r \Rightarrow do {
 v \leftarrow !r;
 r := Node (val v) q;
os-reverse-aux p (next v) })

lemma *os-reverse-aux-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle os_list\ xs\ p * os_list\ ys\ q \rangle$
 $os_reverse_aux\ q\ p$
 $\langle os_list\ ((rev\ xs) @ ys) \rangle$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *os-reverse* :: 'a::heap os-list \Rightarrow 'a os-list Heap **where**

$os\text{-reverse } p = os\text{-reverse-aux } None \ p$

lemma *os-reverse-rule*:

$\langle os\text{-list } xs \ p \rangle \ os\text{-reverse } p \ \langle os\text{-list } (rev \ xs) \rangle \ \langle proof \rangle$

17.4 Remove

$\langle ML \rangle$

partial-function (*heap*) *os-rem* :: 'a::heap \Rightarrow 'a node ref option \Rightarrow 'a node ref option *Heap* **where**

```

os-rem x b = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return None |
  Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
    n  $\leftarrow$  !p;
    q  $\leftarrow$  os-rem x (next n);
    (if (val n = x)
      then return q
      else do {
        p := Node (val n) q;
        return (Some p) }) })

```

lemma *os-rem-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle os\text{-list } xs \ b \rangle \ os\text{-rem } x \ b \ \langle \lambda r. \ os\text{-list } (removeAll \ x \ xs) \ r \rangle_t \ \langle proof \rangle$

17.5 Extract list

partial-function (*heap*) *extract-list* :: 'a::heap *os-list* \Rightarrow 'a list *Heap* **where**

```

extract-list p = (case p of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return []
| Some pp  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  v  $\leftarrow$  !pp;
  ls  $\leftarrow$  extract-list (next v);
  return (val v # ls)
})

```

lemma *extract-list-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle os\text{-list } l \ p \rangle \ extract\text{-list } p \ \langle \lambda r. \ os\text{-list } l \ p \ * \ \uparrow(r = l) \rangle \ \langle proof \rangle$

17.6 Ordered insert

fun *list-insert* :: 'a::ord \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list **where**

```

list-insert x [] = [x]
| list-insert x (y # ys) = (
  if x  $\leq$  y then x # (y # ys) else y # list-insert x ys)

```

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *list-insert-length*:

$length (list-insert\ x\ xs) = length\ xs + 1$
 <proof>
 <ML>

lemma *list-insert-mset* [rewrite]:
 $mset (list-insert\ x\ xs) = \{x\} + mset\ xs$
 <proof>

lemma *list-insert-set* [rewrite]:
 $set (list-insert\ x\ xs) = \{x\} \cup set\ xs$
 <proof>

lemma *list-insert-sorted* [forward]:
 $sorted\ xs \implies sorted (list-insert\ x\ xs)$
 <proof>

partial-function (*heap*) *os-insert* :: 'a::{ord,heap} \Rightarrow 'a *os-list* \Rightarrow 'a *os-list* *Heap*
where

os-insert $x\ b = (case\ b\ of$
 None $\Rightarrow os-prepend\ x\ None$
 | *Some* $p \Rightarrow do \{$
 $v \leftarrow !p;$
 (if $x \leq val\ v$ *then* $os-prepend\ x\ b$
 else $do \{$
 $q \leftarrow os-insert\ x\ (next\ v);$
 $p := Node\ (val\ v)\ q;$
 $return\ (Some\ p)\ \}\ \})$

lemma *os-insert-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle os-list\ xs\ b \rangle os-insert\ x\ b \langle os-list\ (list-insert\ x\ xs) \rangle$
 <proof>

17.7 Insertion sort

fun *insert-sort* :: 'a::ord *list* \Rightarrow 'a *list* **where**
 $insert-sort\ [] = []$
 | $insert-sort\ (x\ \# xs) = list-insert\ x\ (insert-sort\ xs)$
 <ML>

lemma *insert-sort-mset* [rewrite]:
 $mset (insert-sort\ xs) = mset\ xs$
 <proof>

lemma *insert-sort-sorted* [forward]:
 $sorted (insert-sort\ xs)$
 <proof>

lemma *insert-sort-is-sort* [rewrite]:
 $insert-sort\ xs = sort\ xs$ <proof>

fun *os-insert-sort-aux* :: 'a::{ord,heap} list \Rightarrow 'a os-list Heap **where**
os-insert-sort-aux [] = (return None)
| *os-insert-sort-aux* (x # xs) = do {
 b \leftarrow *os-insert-sort-aux* xs;
 b' \leftarrow *os-insert* x *b*;
 return *b'*
}

lemma *os-insert-sort-aux-correct* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle emp \rangle$ *os-insert-sort-aux* xs $\langle os\text{-list } (insert\text{-sort } xs) \rangle$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *os-insert-sort* :: 'a::{ord,heap} list \Rightarrow 'a list Heap **where**
os-insert-sort xs = do {
 p \leftarrow *os-insert-sort-aux* xs;
 l \leftarrow *extract-list* *p*;
 return *l*
}

lemma *insertion-sort-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle emp \rangle$ *os-insert-sort* xs $\langle \lambda ys. \uparrow(ys = sort\ xs) \rangle_t \langle proof \rangle$

17.8 Merging two lists

fun *merge-list* :: ('a::ord) list \Rightarrow 'a list \Rightarrow 'a list **where**
merge-list xs [] = xs
| *merge-list* [] ys = ys
| *merge-list* (x # xs) (y # ys) = (
 if $x \leq y$ then $x \# (merge\text{-list } xs (y \# ys))$
 else $y \# (merge\text{-list } (x \# xs) ys)$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *merge-list-correct* [rewrite]:
 $set (merge\text{-list } xs\ ys) = set\ xs \cup set\ ys$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *merge-list-sorted* [forward]:
 $sorted\ xs \Longrightarrow sorted\ ys \Longrightarrow sorted\ (merge\text{-list } xs\ ys)$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

partial-function (*heap*) *merge-os-list* :: ('a::{heap, ord}) os-list \Rightarrow 'a os-list \Rightarrow 'a os-list Heap **where**
merge-os-list *p* *q* = (
 if *p* = None then return *q*
 else if *q* = None then return *p*
 else do {
 np \leftarrow !(*the* *p*); *nq* \leftarrow !(*the* *q*);
 if $val\ np \leq val\ nq$ then

```

do { npq ← merge-os-list (nxt np) q;
    (the p) := Node (val np) npq;
    return p }
else
do { pnq ← merge-os-list p (nxt nq);
    (the q) := Node (val nq) pnq;
    return q } })

```

lemma *merge-os-list-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs p * os-list ys q>
merge-os-list p q
< $\lambda r$ . os-list (merge-list xs ys) r>
⟨proof⟩

```

17.9 List copy

partial-function (*heap*) *copy-os-list* :: ('a::heap os-list ⇒ 'a os-list Heap **where**

```

copy-os-list b = (case b of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;
  q ← copy-os-list (nxt v);
  os-prepend (val v) q })

```

lemma *copy-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs b> copy-os-list b < $\lambda r$ . os-list xs b * os-list xs r>
⟨proof⟩

```

17.10 Higher-order functions

partial-function (*heap*) *map-os-list* :: ('a::heap ⇒ 'a) ⇒ 'a os-list ⇒ 'a os-list Heap **where**

```

map-os-list f b = (case b of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;
  q ← map-os-list f (nxt v);
  p := Node (f (val v)) q;
  return (Some p) })

```

lemma *map-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs b> map-os-list f b <os-list (map f xs)>
⟨proof⟩

```

partial-function (*heap*) *filter-os-list* :: ('a::heap ⇒ bool) ⇒ 'a os-list ⇒ 'a os-list Heap **where**

```

filter-os-list f b = (case b of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;

```

```

q ← filter-os-list f (next v);
(if (f (val v)) then do {
  p := Node (val v) q;
  return (Some p) }
else return q) }

```

lemma *filter-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs b> filter-os-list f b <λr. os-list (filter f xs) r * true>
⟨proof⟩

```

partial-function (*heap*) *filter-os-list2* :: ('a::heap ⇒ bool) ⇒ 'a os-list ⇒ 'a os-list
Heap where

```

filter-os-list2 f b = (case b of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;
  q ← filter-os-list2 f (next v);
  (if (f (val v)) then os-prepend (val v) q
  else return q) })

```

lemma *filter-os-list2-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs b> filter-os-list2 f b <λr. os-list xs b * os-list (filter f xs) r>
⟨proof⟩

```

⟨ML⟩

partial-function (*heap*) *fold-os-list* :: ('a::heap ⇒ 'b ⇒ 'b) ⇒ 'a os-list ⇒ 'b ⇒ 'b
Heap where

```

fold-os-list f b x = (case b of
  None ⇒ return x
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;
  r ← fold-os-list f (next v) (f (val v) x);
  return r})

```

lemma *fold-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs b> fold-os-list f b x <λr. os-list xs b * ↑(r = fold f xs x)>
⟨proof⟩

```

end

18 Implementation of binary search tree

theory *BST-Impl*

imports *SepAuto ../Functional/BST*

begin

Imperative version of binary search trees.

18.1 Tree nodes

datatype ('a, 'b) node =
Node (lsub: ('a, 'b) node ref option) (key: 'a) (val: 'b) (rsub: ('a, 'b) node ref option)
<ML>

fun node-encode :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) node \Rightarrow nat **where**
node-encode (Node l k v r) = to-nat (l, k, v, r)

instance node :: (heap, heap) heap
<proof>

fun btree :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) tree \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) node ref option \Rightarrow assn **where**
btree Tip p = \uparrow (p = None)
| btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) (Some p) = (\exists Alp rp. p \mapsto_r Node lp k v rp * btree lt lp * btree rt rp)
| btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) None = false
<ML>

lemma btree-Tip [forward-ent]: btree Tip p \Longrightarrow_A \uparrow (p = None) <proof>

lemma btree-Node [forward-ent]:
btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) p \Longrightarrow_A (\exists Alp rp. the p \mapsto_r Node lp k v rp * btree lt lp * btree rt rp * \uparrow (p \neq None))
<proof>

lemma btree-none: emp \Longrightarrow_A btree tree.Tip None <proof>

lemma btree-constr-ent:
p \mapsto_r Node lp k v rp * btree lt lp * btree rt rp \Longrightarrow_A btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) (Some p) <proof>

<ML>

type-synonym ('a, 'b) btree = ('a, 'b) node ref option

18.2 Operations

18.2.1 Basic operations

definition tree-empty :: ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**
tree-empty = return None

lemma tree-empty-rule [hoare-triple]:
<emp> tree-empty <btree Tip> <proof>

definition tree-is-empty :: ('a, 'b) btree \Rightarrow bool Heap **where**
tree-is-empty b = return (b = None)

lemma *tree-is-empty-rule*:

$\langle \text{btree } t \ b \rangle \text{ tree-is-empty } b \langle \lambda r. \text{ btree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow t = \text{Tip}) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition *btree-constr* ::

$('a :: \text{heap}, 'b :: \text{heap}) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) \text{ btree Heap}$ **where**
 $\text{btree-constr } lp \ k \ v \ rp = \text{do } \{ p \leftarrow \text{ref } (\text{Node } lp \ k \ v \ rp); \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

lemma *btree-constr-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{btree } lt \ lp \ * \ \text{btree } rt \ rp \rangle \text{ btree-constr } lp \ k \ v \ rp \langle \text{btree } (\text{tree.Node } lt \ k \ v \ rt) \rangle$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

18.2.2 Insertion

partial-function (*heap*) *btree-insert* ::

$'a :: \{ \text{heap}, \text{linorder} \} \Rightarrow 'b :: \text{heap} \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) \text{ btree Heap}$ **where**

$\text{btree-insert } k \ v \ b = (\text{case } b \text{ of}$

$\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{btree-constr } \text{None } k \ v \ \text{None}$

$| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$

$t \leftarrow !p;$

$(\text{if } k = \text{key } t \text{ then do } \{$

$p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ k \ v \ (\text{rsub } t);$

$\text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

$\text{else if } k < \text{key } t \text{ then do } \{$

$q \leftarrow \text{btree-insert } k \ v \ (\text{lsub } t);$

$p := \text{Node } q \ (\text{key } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ (\text{rsub } t);$

$\text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

$\text{else do } \{$

$q \leftarrow \text{btree-insert } k \ v \ (\text{rsub } t);$

$p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{key } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ q;$

$\text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

lemma *btree-insert-to-fun* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{btree } t \ b \rangle$

$\text{btree-insert } k \ v \ b$

$\langle \text{btree } (\text{tree-insert } k \ v \ t) \rangle$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

18.2.3 Deletion

partial-function (*heap*) *btree-del-min* :: $('a :: \text{heap}, 'b :: \text{heap}) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow (('a \times 'b) \times ('a, 'b) \text{ btree}) \text{ Heap}$ **where**

$\text{btree-del-min } b = (\text{case } b \text{ of}$

$\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{raise STR "del-min: empty tree"}$

$| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$

$t \leftarrow !p;$

$(\text{if } \text{lsub } t = \text{None} \text{ then}$

$\text{return } ((\text{key } t, \text{val } t), \text{rsub } t)$

$\text{else do } \{$

$r \leftarrow \text{btree-del-min } (\text{lsub } t);$

$p := \text{Node } (\text{snd } r) \ (\text{key } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ (\text{rsub } t);$

return (fst r, Some p) }) }

lemma *btree-del-min-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

<btree t b * ↑(b ≠ None)>
 btree-del-min b
 <λ(r,p). btree (snd (del-min t)) p * ↑(r = fst (del-min t))>_t
 ⟨proof⟩

definition *btree-del-elt* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

btree-del-elt b = (case b of
 None ⇒ raise STR "del-elt: empty tree"
 | Some p ⇒ do {
 t ← !p;
 (if lsub t = None then return (rsub t)
 else if rsub t = None then return (lsub t)
 else do {
 r ← btree-del-min (rsub t);
 p := Node (lsub t) (fst (fst r)) (snd (fst r)) (snd r);
 return (Some p) }) })

lemma *btree-del-elt-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

<btree (tree.Node lt x v rt) b>
 btree-del-elt b
 <btree (delete-elt-tree (tree.Node lt x v rt))>_t ⟨proof⟩

partial-function (*heap*) *btree-delete* ::

'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ ('a, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

btree-delete x b = (case b of
 None ⇒ return None
 | Some p ⇒ do {
 t ← !p;
 (if x = key t then do {
 r ← btree-del-elt b;
 return r }
 else if x < key t then do {
 q ← btree-delete x (lsub t);
 p := Node q (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
 return (Some p) }
 else do {
 q ← btree-delete x (rsub t);
 p := Node (lsub t) (key t) (val t) q;
 return (Some p) }) })

lemma *btree-delete-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

<btree t b>
 btree-delete x b
 <btree (tree-delete x t)>_t
 ⟨proof⟩

18.2.4 Search

partial-function (*heap*) *btree-search* ::
 $'a::\{\text{heap}, \text{linorder}\} \Rightarrow ('a, 'b::\text{heap}) \text{btree} \Rightarrow 'b \text{ option Heap}$ **where**
btree-search *x b* = (case *b* of
 None \Rightarrow return None
 | Some *p* \Rightarrow do {
 t \leftarrow !*p*;
 (if *x* = key *t* then return (Some (val *t*))
 else if *x* < key *t* then *btree-search* *x* (lsub *t*)
 else *btree-search* *x* (rsub *t*)) }

lemma *btree-search-correct* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle \text{btree } t \text{ b} * \uparrow(\text{tree-sorted } t) \rangle$
btree-search *x b*
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{btree } t \text{ b} * \uparrow(r = \text{tree-search } t \ x) \rangle$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

18.3 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for operations on binary search tree in terms of the mapping represented by the tree.

definition *btree-map* :: (*'a, 'b*) *map* \Rightarrow ($'a::\{\text{heap}, \text{linorder}\}, 'b::\text{heap}$) *node ref option* \Rightarrow *assn* **where**
btree-map *M p* = ($\exists_A t. \text{btree } t \ p * \uparrow(\text{tree-sorted } t) * \uparrow(M = \text{tree-map } t)$)
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

theorem *btree-empty-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{tree-empty} \langle \text{btree-map empty-map} \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem *btree-insert-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle \text{btree-map } M \ b \rangle \text{btree-insert } k \ v \ b \langle \text{btree-map } (M \ \{k \rightarrow v\}) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem *btree-delete-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle \text{btree-map } M \ b \rangle \text{btree-delete } x \ b \langle \text{btree-map } (\text{delete-map } x \ M) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem *btree-search-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle \text{btree-map } M \ b \rangle \text{btree-search } x \ b \langle \lambda r. \text{btree-map } M \ b * \uparrow(r = M(x)) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

end

19 Implementation of red-black tree

theory *RBTree-Impl*
imports *SepAuto ../Functional/RBTree*
begin

Verification of imperative red-black trees.

19.1 Tree nodes

datatype ('a, 'b) rbt-node =

Node (*lsub*: ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option) (*cl*: color) (*key*: 'a) (*val*: 'b) (*rsub*: ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option)
<ML>

fun color-encode :: color \Rightarrow nat **where**

color-encode B = 0
| color-encode R = 1

instance color :: heap

<proof>

fun rbt-node-encode :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) rbt-node \Rightarrow nat **where**

rbt-node-encode (Node l c k v r) = to-nat (l, c, k, v, r)

instance rbt-node :: (heap, heap) heap

<proof>

fun btree :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option \Rightarrow assn **where**

btree Leaf p = \uparrow (p = None)
| btree (rbt.Node lt c k v rt) (Some p) = ($\exists_A lp rp. p \mapsto_r$ Node lp c k v rp * btree lt lp * btree rt rp)
| btree (rbt.Node lt c k v rt) None = false
<ML>

lemma btree-Leaf [forward-ent]: btree Leaf p $\Longrightarrow_A \uparrow$ (p = None) <proof>

lemma btree-Node [forward-ent]:

btree (rbt.Node lt c k v rt) p $\Longrightarrow_A (\exists_A lp rp. \text{the } p \mapsto_r \text{ Node } lp \ c \ k \ v \ rp \ * \ \text{btree } lt \ lp \ * \ \text{btree } rt \ rp \ * \ \uparrow(p \neq \text{None}))$
<proof>

lemma btree-none: emp \Longrightarrow_A btree Leaf None <proof>

lemma btree-constr-ent:

$p \mapsto_r \text{ Node } lp \ c \ k \ v \ rp \ * \ \text{btree } lt \ lp \ * \ \text{btree } rt \ rp \ \Longrightarrow_A \text{ btree } (\text{rbt.Node } lt \ c \ k \ v \ rt) (\text{Some } p)$ <proof>

<ML>

type-synonym ('a, 'b) btree = ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option

19.2 Operations

19.2.1 Basic operations

definition tree-empty :: ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

tree-empty = return None

lemma *tree-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle emp \rangle$ *tree-empty* $\langle btree\ Leaf \rangle$ $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *tree-is-empty* :: ('a, 'b) btree \Rightarrow bool Heap **where**

tree-is-empty b = return (b = None)

lemma *tree-is-empty-rule*:

$\langle btree\ t\ b \rangle$ *tree-is-empty* b $\langle \lambda r. btree\ t\ b * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow t = Leaf) \rangle$ $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *btree-constr* ::

('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree \Rightarrow color \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) btree \Rightarrow ('a, 'b) btree Heap

where

btree-constr lp c k v rp = do { p \leftarrow ref (Node lp c k v rp); return (Some p) }

lemma *btree-constr-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle btree\ lt\ lp * btree\ rt\ rp \rangle$
btree-constr lp c k v rp
 $\langle btree\ (rbt.Node\ lt\ c\ k\ v\ rt) \rangle$ $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *set-color* :: color \Rightarrow ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree \Rightarrow unit Heap **where**

set-color c p = (case p of
None \Rightarrow raise STR "set-color"
| Some pp \Rightarrow do {
t \leftarrow !pp;
pp := Node (lsub t) c (key t) (val t) (rsub t)
})

lemma *set-color-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle btree\ (rbt.Node\ a\ c\ x\ v\ b)\ p \rangle$
set-color c' p
 $\langle \lambda r. btree\ (rbt.Node\ a\ c'\ x\ v\ b)\ p \rangle$ $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *get-color* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree \Rightarrow color Heap **where**

get-color p = (case p of
None \Rightarrow return B
| Some pp \Rightarrow do {
t \leftarrow !pp;
return (cl t)
})

lemma *get-color-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle btree\ t\ p \rangle$ *get-color* p $\langle \lambda r. btree\ t\ p * \uparrow(r = rbt.cl\ t) \rangle$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

definition *paint* :: color \Rightarrow ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree \Rightarrow unit Heap **where**

paint c p = (case p of
None \Rightarrow return ()
| Some pp \Rightarrow do {

```

    t ← !pp;
    pp := Node (lsub t) c (key t) (val t) (rsub t)
  })

```

lemma *paint-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  paint c p
<λ-. btree (RBTree.paint c t) p>
<proof>

```

19.2.2 Rotation

definition *btree-rotate-l* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-rotate-l p = (case p of
  None ⇒ raise STR "Empty btree"
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (case rsub t of
    None ⇒ raise STR "Empty rsub"
  | Some rp ⇒ do {
    rt ← !rp;
    pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) (lsub rt);
    rp := Node p (cl rt) (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    return (rsub t) })})

```

lemma *btree-rotate-l-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node a c1 x v (rbt.Node b c2 y w c)) p>
  btree-rotate-l p
<btree (rbt.Node (rbt.Node a c1 x v b) c2 y w c)> <proof>

```

definition *btree-rotate-r* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-rotate-r p = (case p of
  None ⇒ raise STR "Empty btree"
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (case lsub t of
    None ⇒ raise STR "Empty lsub"
  | Some lp ⇒ do {
    lt ← !lp;
    pp := Node (rsub lt) (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
    lp := Node (lsub lt) (cl lt) (key lt) (val lt) p;
    return (lsub t) })})

```

lemma *btree-rotate-r-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node (rbt.Node a c1 x v b) c2 y w c) p>
  btree-rotate-r p
<btree (rbt.Node a c1 x v (rbt.Node b c2 y w c))> <proof>

```

19.2.3 Balance

definition *btree-balanceR* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-balanceR p = (case p of None ⇒ return None | Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  cl-r ← get-color (rsub t);
  if cl-r = R then do {
    rt ← !(the (rsub t));
    cl-lr ← get-color (lsub rt);
    cl-rr ← get-color (rsub rt);
    if cl-lr = R then do {
      rp' ← btree-rotate-r (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) rp';
      p' ← btree-rotate-l p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (rsub t');
      return p'
    } else if cl-rr = R then do {
      p' ← btree-rotate-l p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (rsub t');
      return p'
    } else return p }
  else return p})

```

lemma *balanceR-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l B k v r) p>
  btree-balanceR p
  <btree (balanceR l k v r)>
<proof>

```

definition *btree-balance* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-balance p = (case p of None ⇒ return None | Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  cl-l ← get-color (lsub t);
  if cl-l = R then do {
    lt ← !(the (lsub t));
    cl-rl ← get-color (rsub lt);
    cl-ll ← get-color (lsub lt);
    if cl-ll = R then do {
      p' ← btree-rotate-r p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (lsub t');
      return p' }
    else if cl-rl = R then do {
      lp' ← btree-rotate-l (lsub t);
      pp := Node lp' (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      p' ← btree-rotate-r p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (lsub t');

```

```

    return p'
  } else btree-balanceR p }
else do {
  p' ← btree-balanceR p;
  return p'}}
```

lemma *balance-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l B k v r) p>
  btree-balance p
<btree (balance l k v r)>
⟨proof⟩
```

19.2.4 Insertion

partial-function (*heap*) *rbt-ins* ::

'a::{heap,ord} ⇒ 'b::heap ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

rbt-ins k v p = (case p of
  None ⇒ btree-constr None R k v None
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (if cl t = B then
    (if k = key t then do {
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) k v (rsub t);
      return (Some pp) }
    else if k < key t then do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (lsub t);
      pp := Node q (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      btree-balance p }
    else do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) q;
      btree-balance p })
  else
    (if k = key t then do {
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) k v (rsub t);
      return (Some pp) }
    else if k < key t then do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (lsub t);
      pp := Node q (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      return (Some pp) }
    else do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) q;
      return (Some pp) })))}
```

lemma *rbt-ins-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  rbt-ins k v p
<btree (ins k v t)>
```

<proof>

definition *rbt-insert* ::

'a::heap,ord \Rightarrow *'b::heap* \Rightarrow (*'a, 'b*) *btree* \Rightarrow (*'a, 'b*) *btree Heap* **where**
rbt-insert *k v p* = *do* {
 p' \leftarrow *rbt-ins* *k v p*;
 paint *B p'*;
 return p' }

lemma *rbt-insert-to-fun* [*hoare-triple*]:

<btree t p>
rbt-insert *k v p*
<btree (RBTree.rbt-insert k v t)> *<proof>*

19.2.5 Search

partial-function (*heap*) *rbt-search* ::

'a::heap,linorder \Rightarrow (*'a, 'b::heap*) *btree* \Rightarrow *'b option Heap* **where**
rbt-search *x b* = (*case* *b* of
 None \Rightarrow *return None*
 | *Some p* \Rightarrow *do* {
 t \leftarrow *!p*;
 (*if* *x = key t* *then* *return (Some (val t))*)
 else if *x < key t* *then* *rbt-search* *x (lsub t)*
 else *rbt-search* *x (rsub t)* })

lemma *btree-search-correct* [*hoare-triple*]:

*<btree t b * \uparrow (rbt-sorted t)>*
rbt-search *x b*
*< $\lambda r.$ btree t b * \uparrow (r = RBTree.rbt-search t x)>*
<proof>

19.2.6 Delete

definition *btree-balL* :: (*'a::heap, 'b::heap*) *btree* \Rightarrow (*'a, 'b*) *btree Heap* **where**

btree-balL *p* = (*case* *p* of
 None \Rightarrow *return None*
 | *Some pp* \Rightarrow *do* {
 t \leftarrow *!pp*;
 cl-l \leftarrow *get-color* (*lsub t*);
 if *cl-l = R* *then* *do* {
 set-color *B (lsub t)*; — Case 1
 return p }
 else case *rsub t* of
 None \Rightarrow *return p* — Case 2
 | *Some rp* \Rightarrow *do* {
 rt \leftarrow *!rp*;
 if *cl rt = B* *then* *do* {
 set-color *R (rsub t)*; — Case 3
 set-color *B p*;

```

    btree-balance p}
  else case lsub rt of
    None ⇒ return p — Case 4
  | Some lrp ⇒ do {
    lrt ← !lrp;
    if cl lrt = B then do {
      set-color R (lsub rt); — Case 5
      paint R (rsub rt);
      set-color B (rsub t);
      rp' ← btree-rotate-r (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) rp';
      p' ← btree-rotate-l p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (lsub t');
      rp'' ← btree-balance (rsub t');
      the p' := Node (lsub t') (cl t') (key t') (val t') rp'';
      return p'}
    else return p}}})

```

lemma *balL-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l R k v r) p>
  btree-balL p
  <btree (balL l k v r)>
<proof>

```

definition *btree-balR* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

  btree-balR p = (case p of
    None ⇒ return None
  | Some pp ⇒ do {
    t ← !pp;
    cl-r ← get-color (rsub t);
    if cl-r = R then do {
      set-color B (rsub t); — Case 1
      return p}
    else case lsub t of
      None ⇒ return p — Case 2
    | Some lp ⇒ do {
      lt ← !lp;
      if cl lt = B then do {
        set-color R (lsub t); — Case 3
        set-color B p;
        btree-balance p}
      else case rsub lt of
        None ⇒ return p — Case 4
      | Some rlp ⇒ do {
        rlt ← !rlp;
        if cl rlt = B then do {
          set-color R (rsub lt); — Case 5
          paint R (lsub lt);

```



```

    set-color B (lsub t);
    lp' ← btree-rotate-l (lsub t);
    pp := Node lp' (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
    p' ← btree-rotate-r p;
    t' ← !(the p');
    set-color B (rsub t');
    lp'' ← btree-balance (lsub t');
    the p' := Node lp'' (cl t') (key t') (val t') (rsub t');
    return p'
  }
else return p}}})

```

lemma *balR-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l R k v r) p>
  btree-balR p
  <btree (balR l k v r)>
<proof>

```

partial-function (*heap*) *btree-combine* ::

(*'a*::*heap*, *'b*::*heap*) *btree* ⇒ (*'a*, *'b*) *btree* ⇒ (*'a*, *'b*) *btree Heap* **where**

btree-combine *lp rp* =

(*if lp* = *None* then return *rp*

else *if rp* = *None* then return *lp*

else do {

lt ← !(the *lp*);

rt ← !(the *rp*);

if cl lt = *R* then

if cl rt = *R* then do {

tmp ← *btree-combine* (*rsub lt*) (*lsub rt*);

cl-tm ← *get-color tmp*;

if cl-tm = *R* then do {

tmt ← !(the *tmp*);

 the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *R* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) (*lsub tmt*);

 the *rp* := *Node* (*rsub tmt*) *R* (*key rt*) (*val rt*) (*rsub rt*);

 the *tmp* := *Node* *lp R* (*key tmt*) (*val tmt*) *rp*;

 return *tmt*}

 else do {

 the *rp* := *Node* *tmt R* (*key rt*) (*val rt*) (*rsub rt*);

 the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *R* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) *rp*;

 return *lp*}}

 else do {

tmp ← *btree-combine* (*rsub lt*) *rp*;

 the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *R* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) *tmt*;

 return *lp*}

 else *if cl rt* = *B* then do {

tmp ← *btree-combine* (*rsub lt*) (*lsub rt*);

cl-tm ← *get-color tmp*;

if cl-tm = *R* then do {

tmt ← !(the *tmp*);

 the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *B* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) (*lsub tmt*);

```

    the rp := Node (rsub tmt) B (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    the tmp := Node lp R (key tmt) (val tmt) rp;
    return tmp}
else do {
    the rp := Node tmp B (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    the lp := Node (lsub lt) R (key lt) (val lt) rp;
    btree-balL lp}}
else do {
    tmp ← btree-combine lp (lsub rt);
    the rp := Node tmp R (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    return rp}})

```

lemma *combine-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree lt lp * btree rt rp>
  btree-combine lp rp
  <btree (combine lt rt)>
  <proof>

```

partial-function (*heap*) *rbt-del* ::

'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ ('a, 'b)::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

rbt-del x p = (case p of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (if x = key t then btree-combine (lsub t) (rsub t)
  else if x < key t then case lsub t of
    None ⇒ do {
      set-color R p;
      return p}
  | Some lp ⇒ do {
    lt ← !lp;
    if cl lt = B then do {
      q ← rbt-del x (lsub t);
      pp := Node q R (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      btree-balL p }
    else do {
      q ← rbt-del x (lsub t);
      pp := Node q R (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      return p }}}
  else case rsub t of
    None ⇒ do {
      set-color R p;
      return p}
  | Some rp ⇒ do {
    rt ← !rp;
    if cl rt = B then do {
      q ← rbt-del x (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) R (key t) (val t) q;
      btree-balR p }

```

```

else do {
  q ← rbt-del x (rsub t);
  pp := Node (lsub t) R (key t) (val t) q;
  return p }}}}

```

lemma *rbt-del-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  rbt-del x p
  <btree (del x t)>t
⟨proof⟩

```

definition *rbt-delete* ::

```

'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ ('a, 'b)::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap where
rbt-delete k p = do {
  p' ← rbt-del k p;
  paint B p';
  return p'}

```

lemma *rbt-delete-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  rbt-delete k p
  <btree (RBTREE.delete k t)>t ⟨proof⟩

```

19.3 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for operations on red-black tree in terms of the mapping represented by the tree.

definition *rbt-map-assn* :: ('a, 'b) map ⇒ ('a::{heap,linorder}, 'b)::heap) rbt-node ref option ⇒ assn **where**

```

rbt-map-assn M p = (∃A t. btree t p * ↑(is-rbt t) * ↑(rbt-sorted t) * ↑(M = rbt-map t))
⟨ML⟩

```

theorem *rbt-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<emp> tree-empty <rbt-map-assn empty-map> ⟨proof⟩

```

theorem *rbt-insert-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<rbt-map-assn M b> rbt-insert k v b <rbt-map-assn (M {k → v})> ⟨proof⟩

```

theorem *rbt-search* [hoare-triple]:

```

<rbt-map-assn M b> rbt-search x b <λr. rbt-map-assn M b * ↑(r = M⟨x⟩)>
⟨proof⟩

```

theorem *rbt-delete-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<rbt-map-assn M b> rbt-delete k b <rbt-map-assn (delete-map k M)>t ⟨proof⟩

```

end

20 Implementation of arrays

```
theory Arrays-Impl
imports SepAuto ../Functional/Arrays-Ex
begin
```

Imperative implementations of common array operations.

Imperative reverse on arrays is also verified in theory Imperative_Reverse in Imperative_HOL/ex in the Isabelle library.

20.1 Array copy

```
fun array-copy :: 'a::heap array  $\Rightarrow$  'a array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap where
  array-copy a b 0 = (return ())
| array-copy a b (Suc n) = do {
  array-copy a b n;
  x  $\leftarrow$  Array.nth a n;
  Array.upd n x b;
  return () }
```

```
lemma array-copy-rule [hoare-triple]:
  n  $\leq$  length as  $\Longrightarrow$  n  $\leq$  length bs  $\Longrightarrow$ 
  <a  $\mapsto_a$  as * b  $\mapsto_a$  bs>
  array-copy a b n
  < $\lambda$ -. a  $\mapsto_a$  as * b  $\mapsto_a$  Arrays-Ex.array-copy as bs n>
  <proof>
```

20.2 Swap

```
definition swap :: 'a::heap array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap where
  swap a i j = do {
  x  $\leftarrow$  Array.nth a i;
  y  $\leftarrow$  Array.nth a j;
  Array.upd i y a;
  Array.upd j x a;
  return ()
}
```

```
lemma swap-rule [hoare-triple]:
  i < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  j < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$ 
  <p  $\mapsto_a$  xs>
  swap p i j
  < $\lambda$ -. p  $\mapsto_a$  list-swap xs i j> <proof>
```

20.3 Reverse

```
fun rev :: 'a::heap array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap where
  rev a i j = (if i < j then do {
  swap a i j;
```

```

    rev a (i + 1) (j - 1)
  }
  else return ()

```

lemma *rev-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
 $j < \text{length } xs \implies$
 $\langle p \mapsto_a xs \rangle$
 $\text{rev } p \ i \ j$
 $\langle \lambda-. p \mapsto_a \text{rev-swap } xs \ i \ j \rangle$
 <proof>

Correctness of imperative reverse.

theorem *rev-is-rev* [hoare-triple]:
 $xs \neq [] \implies$
 $\langle p \mapsto_a xs \rangle$
 $\text{rev } p \ 0 \ (\text{length } xs - 1)$
 $\langle \lambda-. p \mapsto_a \text{List.rev } xs \rangle$ <proof>

end

21 Implementation of quicksort

theory *Quicksort-Impl*
imports *Arrays-Impl ../Functional/Quicksort*
begin

Imperative implementation of quicksort. Also verified in theory *Imperative_Quicksort* in *HOL/Imperative_HOL/ex* in the Isabelle library.

partial-function (*heap*) *part1* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} array \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow nat *Heap* **where**
 $\text{part1 } a \ l \ r \ p =$ (
 if $r \leq l$ then return r
 else do {
 $v \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ l$;
 if $v \leq p$ then
 $\text{part1 } a \ (l + 1) \ r \ p$
 else do {
 $\text{swap } a \ l \ r$;
 $\text{part1 } a \ l \ (r - 1) \ p$ } })

lemma *part1-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
 $r < \text{length } xs \implies \langle p \mapsto_a xs \rangle$
 $\text{part1 } p \ l \ r \ a$
 $\langle \lambda rs. p \mapsto_a \text{snd } (\text{Quicksort.part1 } xs \ l \ r \ a) * \uparrow(rs = \text{fst } (\text{Quicksort.part1 } xs \ l \ r \ a)) \rangle$
 <proof>

Partition function

definition *partition* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} array ⇒ nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat Heap **where**
partition a l r = do {
p ← *Array.nth a r*;
m ← *part1 a l (r - 1) p*;
v ← *Array.nth a m*;
m' ← *return (if v ≤ p then m + 1 else m)*;
swap a m' r;
return m'
}

lemma *partition-to-fun* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies \langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle$
partition a l r
 $\langle \lambda rs. a \mapsto_a \text{snd} (\text{Quicksort.partition } xs \ l \ r) * \uparrow(rs = \text{fst} (\text{Quicksort.partition } xs \ l \ r)) \rangle$
⟨*proof*⟩

Quicksort function

partial-function (*heap*) *quicksort* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} array ⇒ nat ⇒ nat ⇒ unit Heap **where**
quicksort a l r = do {
len ← *Array.len a*;
 if *l ≥ r* then *return ()*
 else if *r < len* then do {
p ← *partition a l r*;
quicksort a l (p - 1);
quicksort a (p + 1) r
 }
 else *return ()*
}

lemma *quicksort-to-fun* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $r < \text{length } xs \implies \langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle$
quicksort a l r
 $\langle \lambda -. a \mapsto_a \text{Quicksort.quicksort } xs \ l \ r \rangle$
⟨*proof*⟩

definition *quicksort-all* :: ('a::{heap,linorder}) array ⇒ unit Heap **where**
quicksort-all a = do {
n ← *Array.len a*;
 if *n = 0* then *return ()*
 else *quicksort a 0 (n - 1)*
}

Correctness of quicksort.

theorem *quicksort-sorts-basic* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle$
quicksort-all a
 $\langle \lambda -. a \mapsto_a \text{sort } xs \rangle$ ⟨*proof*⟩

end

22 Implementation of union find

theory *Union-Find-Impl*
 imports *SepAuto ../Functional/Union-Find*
begin

Development follows theory `Union_Find` in [5] by Lammich and Meis.

type-synonym *uf* = *nat array* × *nat array*

definition *is-uf* :: *nat* ⇒ (*nat* × *nat*) *set* ⇒ *uf* ⇒ *assn* **where** [*rewrite-ent*]:
 is-uf *n* *R* *u* = (∃ *l* *szl*. *snd* *u* ↦_{*a*} *l* * *fst* *u* ↦_{*a*} *szl* *
 ↑(*ufa-invar* *l*) * ↑(*ufa-α* *l* = *R*) * ↑(*length* *l* = *n*) * ↑(*length* *szl* = *n*))

definition *uf-init* :: *nat* ⇒ *uf Heap* **where**
 uf-init *n* = *do* {
 l ← *Array.of-list* [0..*n*];
 szl ← *Array.new* *n* (1::*nat*);
 return (*szl*, *l*)
 }

Correctness of `uf_init`.

theorem *uf-init-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:
 <*emp*> *uf-init* *n* <*is-uf* *n* (*uf-init-rel* *n*)> <*proof*>

partial-function (*heap*) *uf-rep-of* :: *nat array* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *nat Heap* **where**
 uf-rep-of *p* *i* = *do* {
 n ← *Array.nth* *p* *i*;
 if *n* = *i* *then return* *i* *else uf-rep-of* *p* *n*
 }

lemma *uf-rep-of-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:
 ufa-invar *l* ⇒ *i* < *length* *l* ⇒
 <*p* ↦_{*a*} *l*>
 uf-rep-of *p* *i*
 <λ*r*. *p* ↦_{*a*} *l* * ↑(*r* = *rep-of* *l* *i*)>
<*proof*>

partial-function (*heap*) *uf-compress* :: *nat* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *nat array* ⇒ *unit Heap*
where

uf-compress *i* *ci* *p* = (
 if *i* = *ci* *then return* ()
 else do {
 ni ← *Array.nth* *p* *i*;
 uf-compress *ni* *ci* *p*;
 Array.upd *i* *ci* *p*;
 }

```

    return ()
  })

```

lemma *uf-compress-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

  ufa-invar l  $\implies$  i < length l  $\implies$ 
  <p  $\mapsto_a$  l>
  uf-compress i (rep-of l i) p
  < $\lambda r. \exists_A l'. p \mapsto_a l' * \uparrow(\text{ufa-invar } l' \wedge \text{length } l' = \text{length } l \wedge$ 
    ( $\forall i < \text{length } l. \text{rep-of } l' i = \text{rep-of } l i))$ >
  <proof>

```

definition *uf-rep-of-c* :: nat array \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat Heap **where**

```

  uf-rep-of-c p i = do {
    ci  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of p i;
    uf-compress i ci p;
    return ci
  }

```

lemma *uf-rep-of-c-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

  ufa-invar l  $\implies$  i < length l  $\implies$ 
  <p  $\mapsto_a$  l>
  uf-rep-of-c p i
  < $\lambda r. \exists_A l'. p \mapsto_a l' * \uparrow(r = \text{rep-of } l i \wedge \text{ufa-invar } l' \wedge \text{length } l' = \text{length } l \wedge$ 
    ( $\forall i < \text{length } l. \text{rep-of } l' i = \text{rep-of } l i))$ >
  <proof>

```

definition *uf-cmp* :: uf \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow bool Heap **where**

```

  uf-cmp u i j = do {
    n  $\leftarrow$  Array.len (snd u);
    if (i  $\geq$  n  $\vee$  j  $\geq$  n) then return False
    else do {
      ci  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of-c (snd u) i;
      cj  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of-c (snd u) j;
      return (ci = cj)
    }
  }

```

Correctness of compare.

theorem *uf-cmp-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

  <is-uf n R u>
  uf-cmp u i j
  < $\lambda r. \text{is-uf } n R u * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow (i,j) \in R)$ > <proof>

```

definition *uf-union* :: uf \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow uf Heap **where**

```

  uf-union u i j = do {
    ci  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of (snd u) i;
    cj  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of (snd u) j;
    if (ci = cj) then return u
    else do {

```



```

    si ← Array.nth (fst u) ci;
    sj ← Array.nth (fst u) cj;
    if si < sj then do {
      Array.upd ci cj (snd u);
      Array.upd cj (si+sj) (fst u);
      return u
    } else do {
      Array.upd cj ci (snd u);
      Array.upd ci (si+sj) (fst u);
      return u
    }
  }
}

```

Correctness of union.

theorem *uf-union-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $i < n \implies j < n \implies$
 $\langle is-uf\ n\ R\ u \rangle$
 $uf-union\ u\ i\ j$
 $\langle is-uf\ n\ (per-union\ R\ i\ j) \rangle$ $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

end

23 Implementation of connectivity on graphs

theory *Connectivity-Impl*
imports *Union-Find-Impl* *../Functional/Connectivity*
begin

Imperative version of graph-connectivity example.

23.1 Constructing the connected relation

fun *connected-rel-imp* :: $nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow uf\ Heap$ **where**
 $connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ 0 = do\ \{ p \leftarrow uf-init\ n; return\ p \}$
 $| connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ (Suc\ k) = do\ \{$
 $\ p \leftarrow connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ k;$
 $\ p' \leftarrow uf-union\ p\ (fst\ (es\ !\ k))\ (snd\ (es\ !\ k));$
 $\ return\ p' \}$

lemma *connected-rel-imp-to-fun* [*hoare-triple*]:
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (set\ es) \implies k \leq length\ es \implies$
 $\langle emp \rangle$
 $connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ k$
 $\langle is-uf\ n\ (connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ k) \rangle$
 $\langle proof \rangle$

lemma *connected-rel-imp-correct* [hoare-triple]:
is-valid-graph *n* (*set es*) \implies
 <emp>
connected-rel-imp *n es* (*length es*)
 <is-uf *n* (*connected-rel n* (*set es*))> <proof>

23.2 Connectedness tests

Correctness of the algorithm for detecting connectivity.

theorem *uf-cmp-correct* [hoare-triple]:
 <is-uf *n* (*connected-rel n S*) *p*>
uf-cmp p i j
 < $\lambda r. is-uf\ n\ (connected-rel\ n\ S)\ p * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow has-path\ n\ S\ i\ j)$ > <proof>

end

24 Implementation of dynamic arrays

theory *DynamicArray*
 imports *Arrays-Impl*
 begin

Dynamically allocated arrays.

datatype *'a dynamic-array* = *Dyn-Array* (*alen: nat*) (*aref: 'a array*)
 <ML>

24.1 Raw assertion

fun *dyn-array-raw* :: *'a::heap list* \times *nat* \Rightarrow *'a dynamic-array* \Rightarrow *assn* **where**
dyn-array-raw (*xs*, *n*) (*Dyn-Array m a*) = (*a* \mapsto_a *xs* * $\uparrow(m = n)$)
 <ML>

definition *dyn-array-new* :: *'a::heap dynamic-array Heap* **where**
dyn-array-new = do {
p \leftarrow *Array.new* 5 *undefined*;
 return (*Dyn-Array* 0 *p*)
 }

lemma *dyn-array-new-rule'* [hoare-triple]:
 <emp>
dyn-array-new
 <*dyn-array-raw* (*replicate* 5 *undefined*, 0)> <proof>

fun *double-length* :: *'a::heap dynamic-array* \Rightarrow *'a dynamic-array Heap* **where**
double-length (*Dyn-Array al ar*) = do {
am \leftarrow *Array.len* *ar*;
p \leftarrow *Array.new* ($2 * am + 1$) *undefined*;

```

    array-copy ar p am;
    return (Dyn-Array am p)
  }

```

fun *double-length-fun* :: 'a::heap list × nat ⇒ 'a list × nat **where**
double-length-fun (xs, n) =
 (Arrays-Ex.array-copy xs (replicate (2 * n + 1) undefined) n, n)
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *double-length-rule'* [hoare-triple]:
 length xs = n ⇒
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>
 double-length p
 <dyn-array-raw (double-length-fun (xs, n))>_t ⟨proof⟩

fun *push-array-basic* :: 'a ⇒ 'a::heap dynamic-array ⇒ 'a dynamic-array Heap
where
push-array-basic x (Dyn-Array al ar) = do {
 Array.upd al x ar;
 return (Dyn-Array (al + 1) ar)
 }

fun *push-array-basic-fun* :: 'a ⇒ 'a::heap list × nat ⇒ 'a list × nat **where**
push-array-basic-fun x (xs, n) = (list-update xs n x, n + 1)
 ⟨ML⟩

lemma *push-array-basic-rule'* [hoare-triple]:
 n < length xs ⇒
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>
 push-array-basic x p
 <dyn-array-raw (push-array-basic-fun x (xs, n))> ⟨proof⟩

definition *array-length* :: 'a dynamic-array ⇒ nat Heap **where**
array-length d = return (alen d)

lemma *array-length-rule'* [hoare-triple]:
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>
 array-length p
 <λr. dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p * ↑(r = n)> ⟨proof⟩

definition *array-max* :: 'a::heap dynamic-array ⇒ nat Heap **where**
array-max d = Array.len (aref d)

lemma *array-max-rule'* [hoare-triple]:
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>
 array-max p
 <λr. dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p * ↑(r = length xs)> ⟨proof⟩

definition *array-nth* :: 'a::heap dynamic-array ⇒ nat ⇒ 'a Heap **where**

$array\text{-}nth\ d\ i = Array.nth\ (aref\ d)\ i$

lemma $array\text{-}nth\text{-}rule'$ [hoare-triple]:

$i < n \implies n \leq length\ xs \implies$
 $\langle dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p \rangle$
 $array\text{-}nth\ p\ i$
 $\langle \lambda r. dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p * \uparrow(r = xs\ !\ i) \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

definition $array\text{-}upd :: nat \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a::heap\ dynamic\text{-}array \Rightarrow unit\ Heap$ **where**

$array\text{-}upd\ i\ x\ d = do\ \{ Array.upd\ i\ x\ (aref\ d); return\ () \}$

lemma $array\text{-}upd\text{-}rule'$ [hoare-triple]:

$i < n \implies n \leq length\ xs \implies$
 $\langle dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p \rangle$
 $array\text{-}upd\ i\ x\ p$
 $\langle \lambda r. dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (list\text{-}update\ xs\ i\ x,\ n)\ p \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

definition $push\text{-}array :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a::heap\ dynamic\text{-}array \Rightarrow 'a\ dynamic\text{-}array\ Heap$ **where**

$push\text{-}array\ x\ p = do\ \{$
 $\quad m \leftarrow array\text{-}max\ p;$
 $\quad l \leftarrow array\text{-}length\ p;$
 $\quad if\ l < m\ then\ push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\ x\ p$
 $\quad else\ do\ \{$
 $\quad\quad u \leftarrow double\text{-}length\ p;$
 $\quad\quad push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\ x\ u$
 $\quad\quad \}$
 $\quad \}$
 $\}$

definition $pop\text{-}array :: 'a::heap\ dynamic\text{-}array \Rightarrow ('a \times 'a\ dynamic\text{-}array)\ Heap$ **where**

$pop\text{-}array\ d = do\ \{$
 $\quad x \leftarrow Array.nth\ (aref\ d)\ (alen\ d - 1);$
 $\quad return\ (x,\ Dyn\text{-}Array\ (alen\ d - 1)\ (aref\ d))$
 $\quad \}$

lemma $pop\text{-}array\text{-}rule'$ [hoare-triple]:

$n > 0 \implies n \leq length\ xs \implies$
 $\langle dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p \rangle$
 $pop\text{-}array\ p$
 $\langle \lambda(x,\ r). dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n - 1)\ r * \uparrow(x = xs\ !\ (n - 1)) \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

fun $push\text{-}array\text{-}fun :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a::heap\ list \times nat \Rightarrow 'a\ list \times nat$ **where**

$push\text{-}array\text{-}fun\ x\ (xs,\ n) = ($
 $\quad if\ n < length\ xs\ then\ push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\text{-}fun\ x\ (xs,\ n)$
 $\quad else\ push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\text{-}fun\ x\ (double\text{-}length\text{-}fun\ (xs,\ n)))$

$\langle ML \rangle$

lemma *push-array-rule'* [hoare-triple]:

$n \leq \text{length } xs \implies$
 $\langle \text{dyn-array-raw } (xs, n) \ p \rangle$
 $\text{push-array } x \ p$
 $\langle \text{dyn-array-raw } (\text{push-array-fun } x \ (xs, n)) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

24.2 Abstract assertion

fun *abs-array* :: 'a::heap list \times nat \Rightarrow 'a list **where**

$\text{abs-array } (xs, n) = \text{take } n \ xs$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *double-length-abs* [rewrite]:

$\text{length } xs = n \implies \text{abs-array } (\text{double-length-fun } (xs, n)) = \text{abs-array } (xs, n) \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *push-array-basic-abs* [rewrite]:

$n < \text{length } xs \implies \text{abs-array } (\text{push-array-basic-fun } x \ (xs, n)) = \text{abs-array } (xs, n)$
 $\text{@ } [x]$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *push-array-fun-abs* [rewrite]:

$n \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{abs-array } (\text{push-array-fun } x \ (xs, n)) = \text{abs-array } (xs, n) \text{@ } [x]$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition *dyn-array* :: 'a::heap list \Rightarrow 'a dynamic-array \Rightarrow assn **where** [rewrite-ent]:

$\text{dyn-array } xs \ a = (\exists_{Ap}. \text{dyn-array-raw } p \ a * \uparrow(xs = \text{abs-array } p) * \uparrow(\text{snd } p \leq$
 $\text{length } (\text{fst } p)))$

lemma *dyn-array-new-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{dyn-array-new } \langle \text{dyn-array } [] \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *array-length-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$
 $\text{array-length } p$
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dyn-array } xs \ p * \uparrow(r = \text{length } xs) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *array-nth-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies$
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$
 $\text{array-nth } p \ i$
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dyn-array } xs \ p * \uparrow(r = xs \ ! \ i) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *array-upd-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies$
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$
 $\text{array-upd } i \ x \ p$
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dyn-array } (\text{list-update } xs \ i \ x) \ p \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *push-array-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$
 push-array $x \ p$
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } (xs \ @ \ [x]) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *pop-array-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$xs \neq [] \implies$
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$
 pop-array p
 $\langle \lambda(x, r). \text{dyn-array } (\text{butlast } xs) \ r \ * \ \uparrow(x = \text{last } xs) \rangle$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

24.3 Derived operations

definition *array-swap* :: '*a*::heap dynamic-array \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow unit Heap **where**

```
array-swap d i j = do {  
  x ← array-nth d i;  
  y ← array-nth d j;  
  array-upd i y d;  
  array-upd j x d;  
  return ()  
}
```

lemma *array-swap-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies$
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$
 array-swap $p \ i \ j$
 $\langle \lambda-. \text{dyn-array } (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) \ p \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

end

25 Implementation of the indexed priority queue

theory *Indexed-PQueue-Impl*

imports *DynamicArray ../Functional/Indexed-PQueue*

begin

Imperative implementation of indexed priority queue. The data structure is also verified in [4] by Peter Lammich.

datatype '*a* *indexed-pqueue* =

Indexed-PQueue (*pqueue*: (nat \times '*a*) dynamic-array) (*index*: nat option array)
 $\langle ML \rangle$

fun *idx-pqueue* :: '*a*::heap *idx-pqueue* \Rightarrow '*a* *indexed-pqueue* \Rightarrow assn **where**

idx-pqueue (xs, m) (*Indexed-PQueue* *pq idx*) = (*dyn-array* $xs \ pq \ * \ idx \ \mapsto_a \ m$)
 $\langle ML \rangle$

25.1 Basic operations

definition *idx-pqueue-empty* :: *nat* \Rightarrow *'a::heap indexed-pqueue Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-empty k = do {
  pq  $\leftarrow$  dyn-array-new;
  idx  $\leftarrow$  Array.new k None;
  return (Indexed-PQueue pq idx) }

```

lemma *idx-pqueue-empty-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<emp>
  idx-pqueue-empty n
  <idx-pqueue ([], replicate n None)> <proof>

```

definition *idx-pqueue-nth* :: *'a::heap indexed-pqueue* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow (*nat* \times *'a*) *Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-nth p i = array-nth (pqueue p) i

```

lemma *idx-pqueue-nth-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (i < length xs)>
  idx-pqueue-nth p i
  < $\lambda r$ . idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (r = xs ! i)> <proof>

```

definition *idx-nth* :: *'a::heap indexed-pqueue* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat option Heap* **where**

```

idx-nth p i = Array.nth (index p) i

```

lemma *idx-nth-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (i < length m)>
  idx-nth p i
  < $\lambda r$ . idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (r = m ! i)> <proof>

```

definition *idx-pqueue-length* :: *'a indexed-pqueue* \Rightarrow *nat Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-length a = array-length (pqueue a)

```

lemma *idx-pqueue-length-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p>
  idx-pqueue-length p
  < $\lambda r$ . idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (r = length xs)> <proof>

```

definition *idx-pqueue-swap* ::

'a::{heap,linorder} indexed-pqueue \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *unit Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-swap p i j = do {
  pr-i  $\leftarrow$  array-nth (pqueue p) i;
  pr-j  $\leftarrow$  array-nth (pqueue p) j;
  Array.upd (fst pr-i) (Some j) (index p);
  Array.upd (fst pr-j) (Some i) (index p);
  array-swap (pqueue p) i j
}

```

lemma *idx-pqueue-swap-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

i < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  j < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  index-of-pqueue (xs, m)  $\Longrightarrow$ 

```

$\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$
 $\text{idx-pqueue-swap } p \ i \ j$
 $\langle \lambda-. \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{idx-pqueue-swap-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j) \ p \rangle$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition $\text{idx-pqueue-push} :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a::\text{heap} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue}$
Heap where

$\text{idx-pqueue-push } k \ v \ p = \text{do } \{$
 $\text{len} \leftarrow \text{array-length } (\text{pqueue } p);$
 $d' \leftarrow \text{push-array } (k, v) (\text{pqueue } p);$
 $\text{Array.upd } k \ (\text{Some len}) \ (\text{index } p);$
 $\text{return } (\text{Indexed-PQueue } d' \ (\text{index } p))$
 $\}$

lemma $\text{idx-pqueue-push-rule}$ [hoare-triple]:

$k < \text{length } m \Longrightarrow \neg \text{has-key-alist } xs \ k \Longrightarrow$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$
 $\text{idx-pqueue-push } k \ v \ p$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{idx-pqueue-push-fun } k \ v \ (xs, m)) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition $\text{idx-pqueue-pop} :: 'a::\text{heap} \text{ indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow ((\text{nat} \times 'a) \times 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue})$
Heap where

$\text{idx-pqueue-pop } p = \text{do } \{$
 $(x, d') \leftarrow \text{pop-array } (\text{pqueue } p);$
 $\text{Array.upd } (\text{fst } x) \ \text{None} \ (\text{index } p);$
 $\text{return } (x, \text{Indexed-PQueue } d' \ (\text{index } p))$
 $\}$

lemma $\text{idx-pqueue-pop-rule}$ [hoare-triple]:

$xs \neq [] \Longrightarrow \text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m) \Longrightarrow$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$
 $\text{idx-pqueue-pop } p$
 $\langle \lambda(x, r). \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{idx-pqueue-pop-fun } (xs, m)) \ r \ * \ \uparrow(x = \text{last } xs) \rangle$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition $\text{idx-pqueue-array-upd} :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a::\text{heap} \ \text{dynamic-array} \Rightarrow \text{unit}$
Heap where

$\text{idx-pqueue-array-upd } i \ x \ d = \text{array-upd } i \ x \ d$

lemma $\text{array-upd-idx-pqueue-rule}$ [hoare-triple]:

$i < \text{length } xs \Longrightarrow k = \text{fst } (xs \ ! \ i) \Longrightarrow$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$
 $\text{idx-pqueue-array-upd } i \ (k, v) \ (\text{pqueue } p)$
 $\langle \lambda-. \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{list-update } xs \ i \ (k, v), m) \ p \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition $\text{has-key-idx-pqueue} :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a::\{\text{heap, linorder}\} \ \text{indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$
Heap where

$\text{has-key-idx-pqueue } k \ p = \text{do } \{$


```

i-opt ← Array.nth (index p) k;
return (i-opt ≠ None) }

```

lemma *has-key-idx-pqueue-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

k < length m ⇒ index-of-pqueue (xs, m) ⇒
<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p>
has-key-idx-pqueue k p
< $\lambda r. \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \text{ } p * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{has-key-alist } xs \text{ } k)$ > <proof>

```

<*ML*>

25.2 Bubble up and down

partial-function (*heap*) *idx-bubble-down* :: '*a*::{*heap,linorder*} *indexed-pqueue* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *unit Heap* **where**

```

idx-bubble-down a k = do {
  len ← idx-pqueue-length a;
  (if s2 k < len then do {
    vk ← idx-pqueue-nth a k;
    vs1k ← idx-pqueue-nth a (s1 k);
    vs2k ← idx-pqueue-nth a (s2 k);
    (if snd vs1k ≤ snd vs2k then
      if snd vk > snd vs1k then
        do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (s1 k); idx-bubble-down a (s1 k) }
      else return ()
    else
      if snd vk > snd vs2k then
        do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (s2 k); idx-bubble-down a (s2 k) }
      else return ()
    ) }
  else if s1 k < len then do {
    vk ← idx-pqueue-nth a k;
    vs1k ← idx-pqueue-nth a (s1 k);
    (if snd vk > snd vs1k then
      do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (s1 k); idx-bubble-down a (s1 k) }
      else return ()
    ) }
  else return () }

```

lemma *idx-bubble-down-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

index-of-pqueue x ⇒
<idx-pqueue x a>
idx-bubble-down a k
< $\lambda r. \text{idx-pqueue } (idx\text{-bubble-down-fun } x \text{ } k) \text{ } a$ >
<proof>

```

partial-function (*heap*) *idx-bubble-up* :: '*a*::{*heap,linorder*} *indexed-pqueue* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *unit Heap* **where**

```

idx-bubble-up a k =
  (if k = 0 then return () else do {
    len ← idx-pqueue-length a;

```

```

(if k < len then do {
  vk ← idx-pqueue-nth a k;
  vpk ← idx-pqueue-nth a (par k);
  (if snd vk < snd vpk then
    do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (par k); idx-bubble-up a (par k) }
    else return ()) }
else return ()))

```

lemma *idx-bubble-up-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

index-of-pqueue x ⇒
  <idx-pqueue x a>
  idx-bubble-up a k
  <λ-. idx-pqueue (idx-bubble-up-fun x k) a>
⟨proof⟩

```

25.3 Main operations

definition *delete-min-idx-pqueue* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} indexed-pqueue ⇒ ((nat × 'a) × 'a indexed-pqueue) Heap **where**

```

delete-min-idx-pqueue p = do {
  len ← idx-pqueue-length p;
  if len = 0 then raise STR "delete-min"
  else do {
    idx-pqueue-swap p 0 (len - 1);
    (x', r) ← idx-pqueue-pop p;
    idx-bubble-down r 0;
    return (x', r)
  }
}

```

lemma *delete-min-idx-pqueue-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

xs ≠ [] ⇒ index-of-pqueue (xs, m) ⇒
  <idx-pqueue (xs, m) p>
  delete-min-idx-pqueue p
  <λ(x, r). idx-pqueue (snd (delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun (xs, m))) r *
    ↑(x = fst (delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun (xs, m)))>
⟨proof⟩

```

definition *insert-idx-pqueue* :: nat ⇒ 'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ 'a indexed-pqueue ⇒ 'a indexed-pqueue Heap **where**

```

insert-idx-pqueue k v p = do {
  p' ← idx-pqueue-push k v p;
  len ← idx-pqueue-length p';
  idx-bubble-up p' (len - 1);
  return p'
}

```

lemma *insert-idx-pqueue-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

k < length m ⇒ ¬has-key-alist xs k ⇒ index-of-pqueue (xs, m) ⇒

```

$\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$
 $\text{insert-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{insert-idx-pqueue-fun } k \ v \ (xs, m)) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition $\text{update-idx-pqueue} ::$
 $\text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a::\{\text{heap,linorder}\} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue Heap}$ **where**
 $\text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p = \text{do} \{$
 $\quad i\text{-opt} \leftarrow \text{idx-nth } p \ k;$
 $\quad \text{case } i\text{-opt} \text{ of}$
 $\quad \quad \text{None} \Rightarrow \text{insert-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$
 $\quad | \text{Some } i \Rightarrow \text{do} \{$
 $\quad \quad x \leftarrow \text{idx-pqueue-nth } p \ i;$
 $\quad \quad \text{idx-pqueue-array-upd } i \ (k, v) \ (\text{pqueue } p);$
 $\quad \quad (\text{if } \text{snd } x \leq v \text{ then do } \{\text{idx-bubble-down } p \ i; \text{return } p\}$
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{else do } \{\text{idx-bubble-up } p \ i; \text{return } p\}) \ \}\}$

lemma $\text{update-idx-pqueue-rule}$ [*hoare-triple*]:
 $k < \text{length } m \Longrightarrow \text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m) \Longrightarrow$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$
 $\text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{update-idx-pqueue-fun } k \ v \ (xs, m)) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

25.4 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for indexed priority queue operations in terms of the mapping represented by the queue.

definition $\text{idx-pqueue-map} :: (\text{nat}, 'a::\{\text{heap,linorder}\}) \text{ map} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue}$
 $\Rightarrow \text{assn}$ **where**
 $\text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p = (\exists_{A \ xs} m. \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p *$
 $\quad \uparrow(\text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m)) * \uparrow(\text{is-heap } xs) * \uparrow(M = \text{map-of-alist } xs) * \uparrow(n =$
 $\quad \text{length } m))$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma $\text{heap-implies-hd-min2}$ [*resolve*]:
 $\text{is-heap } xs \Longrightarrow xs \neq [] \Longrightarrow (\text{map-of-alist } xs)\langle k \rangle = \text{Some } v \Longrightarrow \text{snd } (\text{hd } xs) \leq v$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem $\text{idx-pqueue-empty-map}$ [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle$
 $\text{idx-pqueue-empty } n$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map empty-map } n \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem $\text{delete-min-idx-pqueue-map}$ [*hoare-triple*]:
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p * \uparrow(M \neq \text{empty-map}) \rangle$
 $\text{delete-min-idx-pqueue } p$
 $\langle \lambda(x, r). \text{idx-pqueue-map } (\text{delete-map } (\text{fst } x) \ M) \ n \ r * \uparrow(\text{fst } x < n) *$
 $\quad \uparrow(\text{is-heap-min } (\text{fst } x) \ M) * \uparrow(M \langle \text{fst } x \rangle = \text{Some } (\text{snd } x)) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem *insert-idx-pqueue-map* [hoare-triple]:

$k < n \implies k \notin \text{keys-of } M \implies$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \rangle$
 $\text{insert-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } (M \ \{k \rightarrow v\}) \ n \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem *has-key-idx-pqueue-map* [hoare-triple]:

$k < n \implies$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \rangle$
 $\text{has-key-idx-pqueue } k \ p$
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \ * \ \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow k \in \text{keys-of } M) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

theorem *update-idx-pqueue-map* [hoare-triple]:

$k < n \implies$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \rangle$
 $\text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } (M \ \{k \rightarrow v\}) \ n \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

end

26 Implementation of Dijkstra's algorithm

theory *Dijkstra-Impl*

imports *Indexed-PQueue-Impl* *../Functional/Dijkstra*

begin

Imperative implementation of Dijkstra's shortest path algorithm. The algorithm is also verified by Nordhoff and Lammich in [8].

datatype *dijkstra-state* = *Dijkstra-State* (*est-a*: *nat array*) (*heap-pq*: *nat indexed-pqueue*)
 $\langle ML \rangle$

fun *dstate* :: *state* \Rightarrow *dijkstra-state* \Rightarrow *assn* **where**

$dstate \ (State \ e \ M) \ (Dijkstra-State \ a \ pq) = a \ \mapsto_a \ e \ * \ \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ (\text{length } e) \ pq$
 $\langle ML \rangle$

26.1 Basic operations

fun *dstate-pq-init* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *nat indexed-pqueue* *Heap* **where**

$dstate-pq-init \ G \ 0 = \text{idx-pqueue-empty} \ (\text{size } G)$
 $| \ dstate-pq-init \ G \ (Suc \ k) = \text{do} \ \{$
 $\quad p \leftarrow dstate-pq-init \ G \ k;$
 $\quad \text{if } k > 0 \ \text{then } \text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ (\text{weight } G \ 0 \ k) \ p$
 $\quad \text{else } \text{return } p \ \}$

lemma *dstate-pq-init-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

$k \leq \text{size } G \implies$
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle$
 $\text{dstate-pq-init } G \ k$
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } (\text{map-constr } (\lambda i. i > 0)) (\lambda i. \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) \ k) (\text{size } G) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition $\text{dstate-init} :: \text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{dijkstra-state Heap}$ **where**

$\text{dstate-init } G = \text{do } \{$
 $\quad a \leftarrow \text{Array.of-list } (\text{list } (\lambda i. \text{if } i = 0 \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) (\text{size } G));$
 $\quad \text{pq} \leftarrow \text{dstate-pq-init } G \ (\text{size } G);$
 $\quad \text{return } (\text{Dijkstra-State } a \ \text{pq})$
 $\}$

lemma $\text{dstate-init-to-fun}$ [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle$
 $\text{dstate-init } G$
 $\langle \text{dstate } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

fun $\text{dstate-update-est} :: \text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow \text{nat array}$
 $\Rightarrow \text{nat array Heap}$ **where**

$\text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ 0 \ \text{pq} \ a = (\text{return } a)$
 $| \text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ (\text{Suc } k) \ \text{pq} \ a = \text{do } \{$
 $\quad b \leftarrow \text{has-key-idx-pqueue } k \ \text{pq};$
 $\quad \text{if } b \text{ then do } \{$
 $\quad \quad \text{ek} \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ k;$
 $\quad \quad \text{em} \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ m;$
 $\quad \quad \text{a}' \leftarrow \text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ k \ \text{pq} \ a;$
 $\quad \quad \text{a}'' \leftarrow \text{Array.upd } k \ (\text{min } (\text{em} + \text{weight } G \ m \ k) \ \text{ek}) \ \text{a}';$
 $\quad \quad \text{return } \text{a}'' \}$
 $\quad \text{else } \text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ k \ \text{pq} \ a \}$

lemma $\text{dstate-update-est-ind}$ [hoare-triple]:

$k \leq \text{length } e \implies m < \text{length } e \implies$
 $\langle a \mapsto_a e * \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ (\text{length } e) \ \text{pq} \rangle$
 $\text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ k \ \text{pq} \ a$
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dstate } (\text{State } (\text{list-update-set-impl } (\lambda i. i \in \text{keys-of } M)$
 $\quad (\lambda i. \text{min } (e ! m + \text{weight } G \ m \ i) \ (e ! i)) \ e \ k) \ M) (\text{Dijkstra-State}$
 $\quad r \ \text{pq}) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma $\text{dstate-update-est-to-fun}$ [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{dstate } (\text{State } e \ M) (\text{Dijkstra-State } a \ \text{pq}) * \uparrow(m < \text{length } e) \rangle$
 $\text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ (\text{length } e) \ \text{pq} \ a$
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dstate } (\text{State } (\text{list-update-set } (\lambda i. i \in \text{keys-of } M)$
 $\quad (\lambda i. \text{min } (e ! m + \text{weight } G \ m \ i) \ (e ! i)) \ e) \ M) (\text{Dijkstra-State } r \ \text{pq}) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

fun $\text{dstate-update-heap} ::$

$\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat array} \Rightarrow \text{nat indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow \text{nat indexed-pqueue}$

Heap where

```

dstate-update-heap G m 0 a pq = return pq
| dstate-update-heap G m (Suc k) a pq = do {
  b ← has-key-idx-pqueue k pq;
  if b then do {
    ek ← Array.nth a k;
    pq' ← dstate-update-heap G m k a pq;
    update-idx-pqueue k ek pq' }
  else dstate-update-heap G m k a pq }

```

lemma *dstate-update-heap-ind* [hoare-triple]:

```

k ≤ length e ⇒ m < length e ⇒
<a ↦a e * idx-pqueue-map M (length e) pq>
dstate-update-heap G m k a pq
<λr. dstate (State e (map-update-all-impl (λi. e ! i) M k)) (Dijkstra-State a
r)>t
⟨proof⟩

```

lemma *dstate-update-heap-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

m < length e ⇒
∀ i ∈ keys-of M. i < length e ⇒
<dstate (State e M) (Dijkstra-State a pq)>
dstate-update-heap G m (length e) a pq
<λr. dstate (State e (map-update-all (λi. e ! i) M)) (Dijkstra-State a r)>t
⟨proof⟩

```

fun *dijkstra-extract-min* :: *dijkstra-state* ⇒ (*nat* × *dijkstra-state*) **Heap where**

```

dijkstra-extract-min (Dijkstra-State a pq) = do {
  (x, pq') ← delete-min-idx-pqueue pq;
  return (fst x, Dijkstra-State a pq') }

```

lemma *dijkstra-extract-min-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

M ≠ empty-map ⇒
<dstate (State e M) (Dijkstra-State a pq)>
dijkstra-extract-min (Dijkstra-State a pq)
<λ(m, r). dstate (State e (delete-map m M)) r * ↑(m < length e) * ↑(is-heap-min
m M)>t ⟨proof⟩

```

⟨ML⟩

26.2 Main operations

fun *dijkstra-step-impl* :: *graph* ⇒ *dijkstra-state* ⇒ *dijkstra-state* **Heap where**

```

dijkstra-step-impl G (Dijkstra-State a pq) = do {
  (x, S') ← dijkstra-extract-min (Dijkstra-State a pq);
  a' ← dstate-update-est G x (size G) (heap-pq S') (est-a S');
  pq'' ← dstate-update-heap G x (size G) a' (heap-pq S');
  return (Dijkstra-State a' pq'') }

```

lemma *dijkstra-step-impl-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

$\text{heap } S \neq \text{empty-map} \implies \text{inv } G \ S \implies$
 $\langle \text{dstate } S \ (\text{Dijkstra-State } a \ pq) \rangle$
 $\text{dijkstra-step-impl } G \ (\text{Dijkstra-State } a \ pq)$
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S'. \text{dstate } S' \ r * \uparrow(\text{is-dijkstra-step } G \ S \ S') \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

lemma *dijkstra-step-impl-correct* [hoare-triple]:

$\text{heap } S \neq \text{empty-map} \implies \text{inv } G \ S \implies$
 $\langle \text{dstate } S \ p \rangle$
 $\text{dijkstra-step-impl } G \ p$
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S'. \text{dstate } S' \ r * \uparrow(\text{inv } G \ S') * \uparrow(\text{card } (\text{unknown-set } S') = \text{card } (\text{unknown-set } S) - 1) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

fun *dijkstra-loop* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *nat* \Rightarrow *dijkstra-state* \Rightarrow *dijkstra-state* *Heap* **where**

$\text{dijkstra-loop } G \ 0 \ p = (\text{return } p)$
 $| \text{dijkstra-loop } G \ (\text{Suc } k) \ p = \text{do } \{$
 $\quad p' \leftarrow \text{dijkstra-step-impl } G \ p;$
 $\quad p'' \leftarrow \text{dijkstra-loop } G \ k \ p';$
 $\quad \text{return } p'' \}$

lemma *dijkstra-loop-correct* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{dstate } S \ p * \uparrow(\text{inv } G \ S) * \uparrow(n \leq \text{card } (\text{unknown-set } S)) \rangle$
 $\text{dijkstra-loop } G \ n \ p$
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S'. \text{dstate } S' \ r * \uparrow(\text{inv } G \ S') * \uparrow(\text{card } (\text{unknown-set } S') = \text{card } (\text{unknown-set } S) - n) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition *dijkstra* :: *graph* \Rightarrow *dijkstra-state* *Heap* **where**

$\text{dijkstra } G = \text{do } \{$
 $\quad p \leftarrow \text{dstate-init } G;$
 $\quad \text{dijkstra-loop } G \ (\text{size } G - 1) \ p \}$

Correctness of Dijkstra's algorithm.

theorem *dijkstra-correct* [hoare-triple]:

$\text{size } G > 0 \implies$
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle$
 $\text{dijkstra } G$
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S. \text{dstate } S \ r * \uparrow(\text{inv } G \ S) * \uparrow(\text{unknown-set } S = \{\}) *$
 $\quad \uparrow(\forall i \in \text{verts } G. \text{has-dist } G \ 0 \ i \wedge \text{est } S \ ! \ i = \text{dist } G \ 0 \ i) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

end

27 Implementation of interval tree

theory *IntervalTree-Impl*

imports *SepAuto* *../Functional/Interval-Tree*

begin

Imperative version of interval tree.

27.1 Interval and IdxInterval

fun *interval-encode* :: ('a::heap) *interval* \Rightarrow *nat* **where**
 interval-encode (*Interval* *l h*) = *to-nat* (*l*, *h*)

instance *interval* :: (heap) heap
 ⟨*proof*⟩

fun *idx-interval-encode* :: ('a::heap) *idx-interval* \Rightarrow *nat* **where**
 idx-interval-encode (*IdxInterval* *it i*) = *to-nat* (*it*, *i*)

instance *idx-interval* :: (heap) heap
 ⟨*proof*⟩

27.2 Tree nodes

datatype 'a *node* =
 Node (*lsub*: 'a *node ref option*) (*val*: 'a *idx-interval*) (*tmax*: *nat*) (*rsub*: 'a *node ref option*)
 ⟨*ML*⟩

fun *node-encode* :: ('a::heap) *node* \Rightarrow *nat* **where**
 node-encode (*Node* *l v m r*) = *to-nat* (*l*, *v*, *m*, *r*)

instance *node* :: (heap) heap
 ⟨*proof*⟩

fun *int-tree* :: *interval-tree* \Rightarrow *nat node ref option* \Rightarrow *assn* **where**
 int-tree *Tip* *p* = \uparrow (*p* = *None*)
 | *int-tree* (*interval-tree.Node* *lt v m rt*) (*Some* *p*) = (\exists *A lp rp. p* \mapsto_r *Node lp v m rp*
 * *int-tree* *lt lp* * *int-tree* *rt rp*)
 | *int-tree* (*interval-tree.Node* *lt v m rt*) *None* = *false*
 ⟨*ML*⟩

lemma *int-tree-Tip* [*forward-ent*]: *int-tree Tip p* \Longrightarrow_A \uparrow (*p* = *None*) ⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *int-tree-Node* [*forward-ent*]:
 int-tree (*interval-tree.Node* *lt v m rt*) *p* \Longrightarrow_A (\exists *A lp rp. the p* \mapsto_r *Node lp v m rp*
 * *int-tree* *lt lp* * *int-tree* *rt rp* * \uparrow (*p* \neq *None*))
 ⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *int-tree-none*: *emp* \Longrightarrow_A *int-tree interval-tree.Tip None* ⟨*proof*⟩

lemma *int-tree-constr-ent*:
 p \mapsto_r *Node lp v m rp* * *int-tree* *lt lp* * *int-tree* *rt rp* \Longrightarrow_A *int-tree* (*interval-tree.Node*
 lt v m rt) (*Some* *p*) ⟨*proof*⟩

⟨*ML*⟩

type-synonym *int-tree* = *nat node ref option*

27.3 Operations

27.3.1 Basic operation

definition *int-tree-empty* :: *int-tree Heap* **where**
int-tree-empty = return None

lemma *int-tree-empty-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
<emp> *int-tree-empty* <*int-tree Tip*> <proof>

definition *int-tree-is-empty* :: *int-tree* \Rightarrow *bool Heap* **where**
int-tree-is-empty b = return (b = None)

lemma *int-tree-is-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:
<*int-tree t b*>
int-tree-is-empty b
< $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow t = \text{Tip})$ > <proof>

definition *get-tmax* :: *int-tree* \Rightarrow *nat Heap* **where**
get-tmax b = (case b of
 None \Rightarrow return 0
 | Some p \Rightarrow do {
 t \leftarrow !p;
 return (tmax t) })

lemma *get-tmax-rule* [hoare-triple]:
<*int-tree t b*> *get-tmax* b < $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r = \text{interval-tree.tmax } t)$ >
<proof>

definition *compute-tmax* :: *nat idx-interval* \Rightarrow *int-tree* \Rightarrow *int-tree* \Rightarrow *nat Heap*
where
compute-tmax it l r = do {
 lm \leftarrow *get-tmax* l;
 rm \leftarrow *get-tmax* r;
 return (max3 it lm rm)
}

lemma *compute-tmax-rule* [hoare-triple]:
<*int-tree t1 b1* * *int-tree t2 b2*>
compute-tmax it b1 b2
< $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t1 \ b1 \ * \ \text{int-tree } t2 \ b2 \ * \ \uparrow(r = \text{max3 it (interval-tree.tmax } t1) \ (\text{interval-tree.tmax } t2))$ >
<proof>

definition *int-tree-constr* :: *int-tree* \Rightarrow *nat idx-interval* \Rightarrow *int-tree* \Rightarrow *int-tree Heap*
where
int-tree-constr lp v rp = do {
 m \leftarrow *compute-tmax* v lp rp;
 p \leftarrow ref (Node lp v m rp);
 return (Some p) }

lemma *int-tree-constr-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 <int-tree lt lp * int-tree rt rp>
 int-tree-constr lp v rp
 <int-tree (interval-tree.Node lt v (max3 v (interval-tree.tmax lt) (interval-tree.tmax
 rt)) rt)>
 ⟨proof⟩

27.3.2 Insertion

partial-function (*heap*) *insert-impl* :: nat idx-interval \Rightarrow int-tree \Rightarrow int-tree Heap
where

```

insert-impl v b = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  int-tree-constr None v None
| Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  t  $\leftarrow$  !p;
  (if v = val t then do {
    return (Some p) }
  else if v < val t then do {
    q  $\leftarrow$  insert-impl v (lsub t);
    m  $\leftarrow$  compute-tmax (val t) q (rsub t);
    p := Node q (val t) m (rsub t);
    return (Some p) }
  else do {
    q  $\leftarrow$  insert-impl v (rsub t);
    m  $\leftarrow$  compute-tmax (val t) (lsub t) q;
    p := Node (lsub t) (val t) m q;
    return (Some p) }}}}

```

lemma *int-tree-insert-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
 <int-tree t b>
 insert-impl v b
 <int-tree (insert v t)>
 ⟨proof⟩

27.3.3 Deletion

partial-function (*heap*) *int-tree-del-min* :: int-tree \Rightarrow (nat idx-interval \times int-tree)
 Heap **where**

```

int-tree-del-min b = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  raise STR "del-min: empty tree"
| Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  t  $\leftarrow$  !p;
  (if lsub t = None then
    return (val t, rsub t)
  else do {
    r  $\leftarrow$  int-tree-del-min (lsub t);
    m  $\leftarrow$  compute-tmax (val t) (snd r) (rsub t);
    p := Node (snd r) (val t) m (rsub t);
    return (fst r, Some p) }}}}

```

lemma *int-tree-del-min-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle \text{int-tree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(b \neq \text{None}) \rangle$
int-tree-del-min b
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{int-tree } (\text{snd } (\text{del-min } t)) \ (\text{snd } r) \ * \ \uparrow(\text{fst}(r) = \text{fst } (\text{del-min } t)) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition *int-tree-del-elt* :: *int-tree* \Rightarrow *int-tree Heap* **where**

int-tree-del-elt $b = (\text{case } b \ \text{of}$
 $\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{raise STR "del-elt: empty tree"}$
 $| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$
 $\quad t \leftarrow !p;$
 $\quad (\text{if } \text{lsub } t = \text{None} \text{ then return } (\text{rsub } t)$
 $\quad \text{else if } \text{rsub } t = \text{None} \text{ then return } (\text{lsub } t)$
 $\quad \text{else do } \{$
 $\quad \quad r \leftarrow \text{int-tree-del-min } (\text{rsub } t);$
 $\quad \quad m \leftarrow \text{compute-tmax } (\text{fst } r) \ (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{snd } r);$
 $\quad \quad p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{fst } r) \ m \ (\text{snd } r);$
 $\quad \quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \} \ \}$
 $\}$)

lemma *int-tree-del-elt-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle \text{int-tree } (\text{interval-tree.Node } lt \ v \ m \ rt) \ b \rangle$
int-tree-del-elt b
 $\langle \text{int-tree } (\text{delete-elt-tree } (\text{interval-tree.Node } lt \ v \ m \ rt)) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

partial-function (*heap*) *delete-impl* :: *nat idx-interval* \Rightarrow *int-tree* \Rightarrow *int-tree Heap*
where

delete-impl $x \ b = (\text{case } b \ \text{of}$
 $\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{return None}$
 $| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$
 $\quad t \leftarrow !p;$
 $\quad (\text{if } x = \text{val } t \ \text{then do } \{$
 $\quad \quad r \leftarrow \text{int-tree-del-elt } b;$
 $\quad \quad \text{return } r \ \}$
 $\quad \text{else if } x < \text{val } t \ \text{then do } \{$
 $\quad \quad q \leftarrow \text{delete-impl } x \ (\text{lsub } t);$
 $\quad \quad m \leftarrow \text{compute-tmax } (\text{val } t) \ q \ (\text{rsub } t);$
 $\quad \quad p := \text{Node } q \ (\text{val } t) \ m \ (\text{rsub } t);$
 $\quad \quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \}$
 $\quad \text{else do } \{$
 $\quad \quad q \leftarrow \text{delete-impl } x \ (\text{rsub } t);$
 $\quad \quad m \leftarrow \text{compute-tmax } (\text{val } t) \ (\text{lsub } t) \ q;$
 $\quad \quad p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ m \ q;$
 $\quad \quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \} \ \}$
 $\}$)

lemma *int-tree-delete-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:
 $\langle \text{int-tree } t \ b \rangle$
delete-impl $x \ b$
 $\langle \text{int-tree } (\text{delete } x \ t) \rangle_t$

$\langle proof \rangle$

27.3.4 Search

partial-function (*heap*) *search-impl* :: *nat interval* \Rightarrow *int-tree* \Rightarrow *bool Heap* **where**

```
search-impl x b = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return False
| Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  t  $\leftarrow$  !p;
  (if is-overlap (int (val t)) x then return True
  else case lsub t of
    None  $\Rightarrow$  do { b  $\leftarrow$  search-impl x (rsub t); return b }
  | Some lp  $\Rightarrow$  do {
    lt  $\leftarrow$  !lp;
    if tmax lt  $\geq$  low x then
      do { b  $\leftarrow$  search-impl x (lsub t); return b }
    else
      do { b  $\leftarrow$  search-impl x (rsub t); return b } } } }
```

lemma *search-impl-correct* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree t b>
  search-impl x b
  < $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t b * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{search } t x)$ >
 $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

27.4 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for operations on interval tree in terms of the set of intervals represented by the tree.

definition *int-tree-set* :: *nat idx-interval set* \Rightarrow *int-tree* \Rightarrow *assn* **where**

```
int-tree-set S p = ( $\exists_A t. \text{int-tree } t p * \uparrow(\text{is-interval-tree } t) * \uparrow(S = \text{tree-set } t)$ )
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

theorem *int-tree-empty-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<emp> int-tree-empty <int-tree-set {}>  $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

theorem *int-tree-insert-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree-set S b *  $\uparrow(\text{is-interval } (\text{int } x))$ >
  insert-impl x b
  <int-tree-set (S  $\cup$  {x})>  $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

theorem *int-tree-delete-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree-set S b *  $\uparrow(\text{is-interval } (\text{int } x))$ >
  delete-impl x b
  <int-tree-set (S - {x})>t  $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

theorem *int-tree-search-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree-set S b *  $\uparrow(\text{is-interval } x)$ >
  search-impl x b
```

$\langle \lambda r. \text{int-tree-set } S \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{has-overlap } S \ x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

end

28 Implementation of rectangle intersection

theory *Rect-Intersect-Impl*

imports *../Functional/Rect-Intersect IntervalTree-Impl Quicksort-Impl*

begin

Imperative version of rectangle-intersection algorithm.

28.1 Operations

fun *operation-encode* :: ('a::heap) operation \Rightarrow nat **where**

operation-encode oper =

(case oper of *INS* p i n \Rightarrow to-nat (is-INS oper, p, i, n)
| *DEL* p i n \Rightarrow to-nat (is-INS oper, p, i, n))

instance *operation* :: (heap) heap

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

28.2 Initial state

definition *rect-inter-init* :: nat rectangle list \Rightarrow nat operation array Heap **where**

rect-inter-init rects = do {
 p \leftarrow Array.of-list (ins-ops rects @ del-ops rects);
 quicksort-all p;
 return p }

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *rect-inter-init-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{rect-inter-init } \text{rects} \langle \lambda p. p \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

definition *rect-inter-next* :: nat operation array \Rightarrow int-tree \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow int-tree Heap

where

rect-inter-next a b k = do {
 oper \leftarrow Array.nth a k;
 if is-INS oper then
 IntervalTree-Impl.insert-impl (IdxInterval (op-int oper) (op-idx oper)) b
 else
 IntervalTree-Impl.delete-impl (IdxInterval (op-int oper) (op-idx oper)) b }

lemma *op-int-is-interval*:

is-rect-list rects \Longrightarrow ops = all-ops rects \Longrightarrow k < length ops \Longrightarrow
is-interval (op-int (ops ! k))

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

lemma *rect-inter-next-rule* [hoare-triple]:
 $\text{is-rect-list } \text{rects} \implies k < \text{length } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects}) \implies$
 $\langle a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \text{int-tree-set } S \ b \rangle$
 $\text{rect-inter-next } a \ b \ k$
 $\langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \text{int-tree-set } (\text{apply-ops-k-next } \text{rects } S \ k) \ r \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

partial-function (*heap*) *rect-inter-impl* ::
 $\text{nat operation array} \Rightarrow \text{int-tree} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{bool Heap}$ **where**
 $\text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b \ k = \text{do } \{$
 $\quad n \leftarrow \text{Array.len } a;$
 $\quad (\text{if } k \geq n \text{ then return False}$
 $\quad \text{else do } \{$
 $\quad \quad \text{oper} \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ k;$
 $\quad \quad (\text{if is-INS } \text{oper} \text{ then do } \{$
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{overlap} \leftarrow \text{IntervalTree-Impl.search-impl } (\text{op-int } \text{oper}) \ b;$
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{if } \text{overlap} \text{ then return True}$
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{else if } k = n - 1 \text{ then return False}$
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{else do } \{$
 $\quad \quad \quad \quad b' \leftarrow \text{rect-inter-next } a \ b \ k;$
 $\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b' \ (k + 1)\}$
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{else}$
 $\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{if } k = n - 1 \text{ then return False}$
 $\quad \quad \quad \quad \text{else do } \{$
 $\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad b' \leftarrow \text{rect-inter-next } a \ b \ k;$
 $\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b' \ (k + 1)\}\}\}\}$

lemma *rect-inter-to-fun-ind* [hoare-triple]:
 $\text{is-rect-list } \text{rects} \implies k < \text{length } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects}) \implies$
 $\langle a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \text{int-tree-set } S \ b \rangle$
 $\text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b \ k$
 $\langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{rect-inter } \text{rects } S \ k) \rangle_t$
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

definition *rect-inter-all* :: $\text{nat rectangle list} \Rightarrow \text{bool Heap}$ **where**
 $\text{rect-inter-all } \text{rects} =$
 $\quad (\text{if } \text{rects} = [] \text{ then return False}$
 $\quad \text{else do } \{$
 $\quad \quad a \leftarrow \text{rect-inter-init } \text{rects};$
 $\quad \quad b \leftarrow \text{int-tree-empty};$
 $\quad \quad \text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b \ 0 \}$

Correctness of rectangle intersection algorithm.

theorem *rect-inter-all-correct*:
 $\text{is-rect-list } \text{rects} \implies$
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle$
 $\text{rect-inter-all } \text{rects}$

$\langle \lambda r. \uparrow(r = \text{has-rect-overlap } \text{rects}) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

end

References

- [1] L. Bulwahn, A. Krauss, F. Haftmann, L. Erkök, and J. Matthews. Imperative functional programming with isabelle/hol. In O. A. Mohamed, C. Muñoz, and S. Tahar, editors, *Theorem Proving in Higher Order Logics*, pages 134–149, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2008. Springer Berlin Heidelberg.
- [2] T. H. Cormen, C. E. Leiserson, R. L. Rivest, and C. Stein. Introduction to algorithms third edition. 2009.
- [3] P. Lammich. Collections framework. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Nov. 2009. <http://isa-afp.org/entries/Collections.html>, Formal proof development.
- [4] P. Lammich. The imperative refinement framework. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Aug. 2016. http://isa-afp.org/entries/Refine_Imperative_HOL.html, Formal proof development.
- [5] P. Lammich and R. Meis. A separation logic framework for imperative hol. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Nov. 2012. http://isa-afp.org/entries/Separation_Logic_Imperative_HOL.html, Formal proof development.
- [6] T. Nipkow. Automatic functional correctness proofs for functional search trees. In J. C. Blanchette and S. Merz, editors, *Interactive Theorem Proving*, pages 307–322, Cham, 2016. Springer International Publishing.
- [7] T. Nipkow. Programming and proving in isabelle/hol. 2018.
- [8] B. Nordhoff and P. Lammich. Dijkstra’s shortest path algorithm. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Jan. 2012. http://isa-afp.org/entries/Dijkstra_Shortest_Path.html, Formal proof development.
- [9] B. Zhan. Efficient verification of imperative programs using auto2. In D. Beyer and M. Huisman, editors, *TACAS 2018*, pages 23–40, 2018.